# **CA NetMaster® Network Automation**

# **Administration Guide**

Release 12.1



This Documentation, which includes embedded help systems and electronically distributed materials, (hereinafter referred to as the "Documentation") is for your informational purposes only and is subject to change or withdrawal by CA at any time.

This Documentation may not be copied, transferred, reproduced, disclosed, modified or duplicated, in whole or in part, without the prior written consent of CA. This Documentation is confidential and proprietary information of CA and may not be disclosed by you or used for any purpose other than as may be permitted in (i) a separate agreement between you and CA governing your use of the CA software to which the Documentation relates; or (ii) a separate confidentiality agreement between you and CA.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, if you are a licensed user of the software product(s) addressed in the Documentation, you may print or otherwise make available a reasonable number of copies of the Documentation for internal use by you and your employees in connection with that software, provided that all CA copyright notices and legends are affixed to each reproduced copy.

The right to print or otherwise make available copies of the Documentation is limited to the period during which the applicable license for such software remains in full force and effect. Should the license terminate for any reason, it is your responsibility to certify in writing to CA that all copies and partial copies of the Documentation have been returned to CA or destroyed.

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, CA PROVIDES THIS DOCUMENTATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT WILL CA BE LIABLE TO YOU OR ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY LOSS OR DAMAGE, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, FROM THE USE OF THIS DOCUMENTATION, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS, LOST INVESTMENT, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, GOODWILL, OR LOST DATA, EVEN IF CA IS EXPRESSLY ADVISED IN ADVANCE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH LOSS OR DAMAGE.

The use of any software product referenced in the Documentation is governed by the applicable license agreement and such license agreement is not modified in any way by the terms of this notice.

The manufacturer of this Documentation is CA.

Provided with "Restricted Rights." Use, duplication or disclosure by the United States Government is subject to the restrictions set forth in FAR Sections 12.212, 52.227-14, and 52.227-19(c)(1) - (2) and DFARS Section 252.227-7014(b)(3), as applicable, or their successors.

Copyright © 2012 CA. All rights reserved. All trademarks, trade names, service marks, and logos referenced herein belong to their respective companies.

## **CA Technologies Product References**

This document references the following CA Technologies products:

- CA NetMaster® Network Automation (CA NetMaster NA)
- CA NetMaster® Network Management for SNA (CA NetMaster NM for SNA)
- CA NetSpy<sup>™</sup> Network Performance (CA NetSpy)
- CA Common Services for z/OS
- CA OPS/MVS® Event Management and Automation (CA OPS/MVS)
- CA Network and Systems Management (CA NSM)
- CA Service Desk for z/OS (CA Service Desk)
- CA SOLVE:Central<sup>™</sup> Service Desk for z/OS (CA SOLVE:Central), which includes CA SOLVE:Problem
- CA TCPaccess™ Communications Server for z/OS (CA TCPaccess CS for z/OS)

## **Contact CA Technologies**

#### **Contact CA Support**

For your convenience, CA Technologies provides one site where you can access the information that you need for your Home Office, Small Business, and Enterprise CA Technologies products. At <a href="http://ca.com/support">http://ca.com/support</a>, you can access the following resources:

- Online and telephone contact information for technical assistance and customer services
- Information about user communities and forums
- Product and documentation downloads
- CA Support policies and guidelines
- Other helpful resources appropriate for your product

#### **Providing Feedback About Product Documentation**

If you have comments or questions about CA Technologies product documentation, you can send a message to <u>techpubs@ca.com</u>.

To provide feedback about CA Technologies product documentation, complete our short customer survey which is available on the CA Support website at <a href="http://ca.com/docs">http://ca.com/docs</a>.

# **Contents**

Chapter 1: Introduction	17
Intended Audience	17
Typographic Conventions	
Chapter 2: Starting and Stopping a Region	19
Start SOLVE SSI	19
Stop SOLVE SSI	20
Start a Region	20
WTOR Confirmation Message	20
Stop a Region	21
SHUTDOWN Command	22
FSTOP Command	22
How You Preserve Data When Region Stops and Restarts	22
Create Persistent Global Variables Using the User Interface	23
Prevent the Reloading of Preserved Data	23
Chapter 3: Configuring a Region	25
Region Configuration	25
How You Use JCL Parameters to Configure a Region	25
How You Display and Change JCL Parameter Settings	25
How You Identify the Region to Users	26
How You Identify Domains and Panels	26
Region Customizer	26
What Are Parameter Groups?	27
System Parameters	27
Use the SYSPARMS Command	27
Initialization Operands	28
Capture Messages Not Handled by Rules	29
Transient Log Tuning	29
Customize Tuning Parameters	30
Resize Selected Transient Logs	31
Resize Multiple Transient Logs in an Image	32
Chapter 4: Performing Optional Customization	33
Customize Activity Log Settings	33

Disable System Message	33
Disable Command Logging	34
Allocate Activity Log Files	34
How to Customize SNA Resource Discovery	35
Warm and Cold Starts of SNA Resource Discovery	35
Control Dynamic and Transient SNA Resources	36
Control Discovery Based on the Status of PPO Message Flow	37
Select Which SNA Resources Are Discovered	38
Customize the Information About SNA Resources	40
Tune the Discovery Process	43
Discover SNA Resources	
SNA Groups	44
Chapter 5: Controlling the System Image	45
Set the Default System Image	
Load a System Image	
Checkpoint Restart Function	
Global Operation Mode	
Set Global Operation Mode	
Shut Down Resources in a Loaded System Image	
Shut Down a Manual Resource	
Shut Down All Resources	
Restart Resources in a Loaded System Image	
Nestalt Nesources III a Loaded System IIIIage	
Chapter 6: Defining and Maintaining SNA Resource Filters	51
SNA Resource Filters	51
Implement the SNA Resource Filters	51
Access SNA Resource Filter Definitions	52
Actions Available on the SNA Resource Filter List	52
Define an SNA Resource Filter	53
Define the SNA Resource Filter Expression	54
Chapter 7: Grouping SNA Resources	55
SNA Groups	55
When to Define SNA Groups	55
What to Define for an SNA Group	56
How the Region Maintains the Desired State of an SNA Group	57
Access SNA Group Definitions	58
Actions on an SNA Group Definition	59

How to Define an SNA Group	
Define an SNA Group	60
SNA Group General Description	60
SNA Group Filters	61
State Thresholds	66
State Change Exits	70
Logging Details	72
Owner Details	72
Extended Function Exit	72
Display an SNA Group on the Graphical Monitor	72
Display the Status of Included SNA Resources on Icons	72
Chapter 8: Managing SNA Resources from a Service Perspective	73
Resource Management by Services	73
Manage the Desired State of Resources	74
Provide a Service-driven Operations Perspective of Your Networks	74
Implement the SNA Operations Environment	77
How to Define Automation Requirements	
Define Monitor Views	77
Chapter 9: Implementing Services  Services	
Access Service Definitions	
Service Definition Panels	
General Description	
Select Service Members	
Merge Two Service Images	85
State Thresholds	
State Change Exits	86
Define the Logging Details	86
Owner Details	87
Extended Function Exit	87
Maintenance of Service Definitions	87
Back Up Service Definitions	87
Update Service Definitions in a Backup Service Image	88
Restore a Service Definition from a Backup Service Image	89
Chapter 10: Implementing Availability Maps	91
Availability Maps	91
How You Implement Availability Maps	

Rules for Availability Map Definitions	92
Access Availability Map Definitions	93
Temporary Availability Maps	93
Create an Availability Map	93
How You Define Timers	94
Availability Map Example	95
Timer Information	96
View All Timer Information	96
View the Timer Information in One Availability Map	96
Attach a Service or Resource Definition to an Availability Map	97
Detach Service or Resource Definitions from an Availability Map	98
Maintenance of Availability Map Definitions	98
Chapter 11: Implementing the Graphical Monitor	99
Graphical Monitor	99
How You Customize the Graphical Monitor	99
Resource Groups for Icons	100
Access Resource Group Definitions	100
Add a Resource Group Definition	100
Maintenance of Resource Group Definitions	103
Icons	103
Access Icon Definitions	103
Define an Icon	104
Maintenance of Icon Definitions	107
Icon Panels	108
Access Icon Panel Definitions	108
Define an Icon Panel	108
Maintenance of Icon Panel Definitions	114
How You Edit a Generated Icon Panel	115
Set Up Default Icon Panel for Your Users	116
Example: Graphical Monitor Configuration	116
Chapter 12: Implementing EventView	119
EventView	119
EventView Functions	
Event-based Automation	121
Console Message Consolidation	121
Benefits of Using EventView	
Message Monitoring	122
Console Consolidation Disabled	
Console Consolidation Enabled	123

How You Implement Message Profiles	124
Alert Generation	125
Chapter 13: Implementing EventView Rule Sets	127
EventView Rule Sets	128
Add an EventView Rule Set	128
Specify Control Options for Testing	129
Monitor EventView Rule Set Status	129
Statistics	130
Change the EventView Rule Set Associated with a Local System Image	130
Add Associated Rules	131
Message Rules	131
Message Groups	132
Timers	134
Initial Actions	134
How You Add Initial Actions	135
How Initial Actions Are Executed	136
Include EventView Rule Sets in Other Rule Sets	136
Maintenance of EventView Rule Sets	136
EventView Variables	137
View EventView Variables	137
Chapter 14: Configuring Timers	139
Timer Rules	139
Add Timers	
How Catchup Works	141
Timer Schedule Items	141
Timer Actions	144
Display Active Timer Rules	144
Chapter 15: Processing Messages	145
Message Rules	145
How You Specify Message Filtering Criteria	
Use Wildcards in Message Text	147
Extended Filtering Criteria	148
Message Text Analysis	
EventView Variables	
Execution Conditions	157
Overlapping Rules	157
How You Suppress Messages	158

Message Delivery	158
Set the Deliver Flag	158
Delivery Thresholds	159
Message Modification	160
Message Text Replacement	161
System Message Presentation Parameters	161
OCS Message Presentation Parameters	162
Actions to Take in Response to Messages	163
Chapter 16: Message Learning	165
About Message Learning	165
Control Message Learning	166
Browse and Update Learnt Messages	166
Generate a Rule for a Learnt Message	167
Reset New Message Indicators	167
Delete All Learnt Messages	168
Chapter 17: Implementing Message Profiles	169
Consolidated Console	169
How Console Consolidation Works in a Multisystem Environment	170
Message Profiles	171
Rules for Defining and Using Message Profiles	171
Access the Message Profile Definitions	175
How You Define a Message Profile	176
Profile Details	177
System Criteria	177
Message ID Criteria	178
Job Criteria	178
System Codes Criteria	178
Message Type, Level, and Job Criteria	179
Example: Profile Specific Messages	180
Example: Profile Messages for Specific Jobs	184
Example: Profile All Messages	186
Example: Profile Messages for a Particular System	187
Change the Activation Status of a Message Profile	187
Activate Message Profiles	
Message Profile Size Considerations	188
Maintenance of Message Profile Definitions	188
Monitor Messages Using Consolidated Console	189
Message Monitor	
Prefix Messages with the System Name	189

189
190
190
191
191
193
194
194
195
195
195
196
197
197
198
199
199
200
201
201
202
202
203
204
204
204
205
206
206
207
208
208
209
209
210
210
211

Chapter 20: Setting Up the Alert Monitor	213
Access Alert Administration	213
Alert Monitor Trouble Ticket Interface	214
Define a Trouble Ticket Interface	215
Set Up the Trouble Ticket Data Entry Definition	220
Implement Trouble Ticket Interface for Multiple Email Addressees	222
Define Alert Monitor Filters	224
Alert Monitor Display Format	225
Create the Alert Monitor Display Format	225
Enable Alerts from External Applications	226
Alert Forwarding	226
Implement Alert Forwarding	227
SNMP Trap Definition	227
Forward to Tivoli NetView	228
Forward to CA NSM	229
Alert Forwarding to CA Service Desk	229
Suppress State Change Alerts	230
State Change Alerts	230
CA Service Desk Integration	231
Software Requirements	231
How Requests Are Created	231
Other Ways to Create Requests or Incidents	232
Request Description Format	2 <b>3</b> 3
Implement the Alert History Function	<b>23</b> 3
Reorganize Files and Monitor Space Usage	234
Extract Alert Data for Reporting	235
Chapter 21: Implementing Status Monitor Filters	237
Implement the Status Monitor Filters	237
Access Status Monitor Filter Definitions	237
Add a Status Monitor Filter	238
Status Monitor Filter Panel	239
How You Define the Status Monitor Filter Expression	240
Maintenance of Status Monitor Filter Definitions	241
Chapter 22: Implementing Resource Templates	243
Resource Templates	243
USRCLS Class Template	243
Set Up Your Template System	244
\$TEMPLAT System Image for Multiple Products	244

Associate a Template to a Resource Class	245
Resource Template Definitions	245
Variables	245
Disable Substitution of Variables	246
Specify a Variable to Represent a Left-justified Fixed-length Field	246
Specify a Variable to Represent a Right-justified Fixed-length Field	246
Maintenance of Resource Template Definitions	246
Apply Updated Templates	247
Availability Maps in a Template System Image	247
Access Map Definitions in a Template System Image	247
Define and Maintain Processes in a Template System Image	248
Access the Process Definitions in a Template System Image	248
Convert a Resource Definition into a Resource Template	249
Chapter 23: Implementing Print Services	251
Print Services Manager	251
Access PSM	252
Add a Printer Definition	253
List Printer Definitions	253
Add a Form Definition	253
List Form Definitions	254
Add Control Characters	254
List Control Characters	254
Add a Default Printer for a User ID	255
List Default Printers	255
Clear the Printer Spool	256
Exits to Send Print Requests to a Data Set	256
How the Procedures Process a Print Request	257
\$PSDS81X and \$PSDS81Z Parameters	257
Printer Exit Definition Example	260
Print-to-Email	261
Chapter 24: Implementing Processes	263
How to Implement Processes	263
Process Types	265
Access Process Definitions	266
How to Define a Process	266
Set Macro Parameters	268
Generic Processes Using Resource Variables	269
Processes to Generate Alerts	271
How You Test a Process	273

Test a Process Interactively	274
Test a Process by Execution as a Single Task	274
How You Log Process Activities	275
Maintenance of Process Definitions	275
Back Up Global Processes	276
Update Global Process Definitions in a Backup Global Process Image	277
Restore a Global Process Definition from a Backup Global Process Image	277
Merge Two Global Process Images	278
Chapter 25: Setting Up the Initialization File	279
Generate an Initialization File	279
How You Configure the Initialization File	280
Configure a Common Initialization File	280
Configure Individual Initialization Files	281
Start Your Region from an Initialization File	282
Chapter 26: Administering a Multisystem Environment	283
Multisystem Operation	283
Links in a Multisystem Environment	285
Multisystem Implementation Considerations	286
How a Multisystem Environment Is Established	287
Linked Regions and Database Synchronization	287
Background User Considerations	289
Link and Synchronize Regions	289
Monitor the Synchronization Procedure	291
Knowledge Base Synchronization Maintenance	292
Display Linked Regions	292
Unlink Regions	293
Transmission of Records	293
Transmit Records	294
Chapter 27: Implementing the NetMaster-to-NetSpy Interface	297
Customize the NetMaster-to-NetSpy Interface	297
Manage NetMaster-to-NetSpy Connections	298
Manage CA NetSpy Alerts and Monitors	
Manage NetSpy User Alert Monitors in CA NetMaster	
Define CA NetSpy User Alert Monitors	299
Issue CA NetSpy Commands	300

Appendix A: Variables	301
SNA Resource Variables	301
Appendix B: SNA Resource Message Routing Codes	303
Message Routing Codes	303
Appendix C: Health Checks	305
CA Health Checker	305
NM_ACB	306
NM_INITIALIZATION	307
NM_SOCKETS	308
NM_SSI	309
NM_WEB	310
Index	311

# **Chapter 1: Introduction**

This section contains the following topics:

<u>Intended Audience</u> (see page 17)
<u>Typographic Conventions</u> (see page 17)

## **Intended Audience**

This guide is intended for technical personnel responsible for the planning, setup, and maintenance of your product's functions and services.

## **Typographic Conventions**

This table explains the conventions used when referring to various types of commands and when indicating field attributes.

Convention	Description
Commands	Commands such as SYSPARM and SHUTDOWN are shown in uppercase.
User Entries	Information to enter onto panels is displayed in <b>bold</b> text.
Cross-References	Cross-reference links to other sections of the book are displayed as underlined blue text.
Shortcuts	Shortcuts to menus or options are displayed in <b>bold</b> , for example, <b>/PARMS</b> .

# Chapter 2: Starting and Stopping a Region

This section contains the following topics:

Start SOLVE SSI (see page 19)

Stop SOLVE SSI (see page 20)

Start a Region (see page 20)

Stop a Region (see page 21)

How You Preserve Data When Region Stops and Restarts (see page 22)

## Start SOLVE SSI

To start the SOLVE SSI, issue the following command:

S ssiname, REUSASID=YES

For a region to connect to SOLVE SSI, it must first know the SSID to connect to. To identify the SSID, specify the SSID JCL parameter or use Customizer parameter groups. When this connection is complete, authorized region users can issue SOLVE SSI commands.

The region can use the SSID JCL parameter to establish an early connection to SOLVE SSI during initialization.

This parameter has the following format:

```
SSID={ NO | * | name }
```

#### NO

(Default) Does not attempt to connect to SOLVE SSI. The connection is only started (or attempted) after a SYSPARMS SSID command is issued.

\*

Starts or attempts a connection to an SSID with the first four characters of the region job name.

#### name

Starts or attempts a connection to the specified SSID.

If asterisk (\*) or *name* is specified, an attempt to connect to the SSI is immediately made. If it fails, it retries every *n* seconds, depending on the default value of the SSI retry interval.

**Note:** To change the value of the SSID to connect at any time, update the SSI parameter group (enter **/PARMS**). You can use this parameter group to change the SSID value or to specify an SSI retry interval.

## **Stop SOLVE SSI**

To stop SOLVE SSI, use *one* of the following methods:

■ Enter the following command:

SSI STOP

■ Enter the following operating system STOP (P) command:

P ssiname

**Note:** If you use cross memory services but have not specified REUSASID=YES when you start SOLVE SSI, the address space running SOLVE SSI terminates and is not available until after the next IPL.

## **Start a Region**

To start a region, you run it as a job or a started task. A started task has been set up during the installation process.

To start a region, issue the following command:

S rname, REUSASID=YES

Users log on to a region by using the user IDs and passwords specified in their UAMS (or external security package) records.

## **WTOR Confirmation Message**

If you have implemented region startup confirmation, the RMIWTO06 WTOR message is displayed and startup pauses.

The WTOR message enables you to change the startup parameters. If a reply to the message is not made in 120 seconds, startup continues.

**Note:** For information about startup confirmation, see the online help for the AUTOIDS parameter groups.

## **Continue Startup with No Change**

To continue startup with no change to the parameters, reply as follows:

R n, U

*n* is the identification number of the WTOR message.

### **Continue Startup with Changes**

To continue startup with changes to the parameters, reply as follows:

R n,parameter-1=value-1[,parameter-2=value-2[,...[,parameter-n=value-n]]]

You can use the following parameters in your reply. The parameters change the field values in the AUTOIDS parameter group specification panel that affects the loading of the system image.

#### **SYSTEM**

Corresponds to the System Image Name field.

#### **VERSION**

Corresponds to the Version field.

#### MODE

Corresponds to the Automation Mode field.

#### COLD

Corresponds to the Cold Start on Next Restart? field.

If you reply to change parameters, you are asked to confirm your changes. You can then make additional changes or accept the displayed values.

#### **Example: Load a Different System Image**

This example reply changes the system image to load to PROD version 2:

R n, SYSTEM=PROD, VERSION=2

## Stop a Region

If you have the necessary authority, you can shut down the region.

To stop a region, issue the operating system STOP (P) command.

You can also stop a region by issuing *one* of the following commands: **SHUTDOWN** or **FSTOP**.

#### SHUTDOWN Command

The SHUTDOWN command stops the region when the last user logs off. When you issue the SHUTDOWN command, a broadcast is issued to all users. No further logons are accepted until the region is restarted, or the SHUTDOWN CANCEL command is issued.

You can issue the SHUTDOWN command from OCS or Command Entry. Alternatively, you can issue it as a z/OS MODIFY command.

**Note:** For more information about the SHUTDOWN command, see the online help.

## **FSTOP Command**

The FSTOP command immediately disconnects user sessions and shuts down the region.

Restrict the use of the FSTOP command.

You can issue the FSTOP command from OCS or Command Entry. Alternatively, you can issue it as a z/OS MODIFY command.

**Important!** If you are running another product in the same region, it also stops if the FSTOP command is issued.

**Note:** For more information about the FSTOP command, see the online help.

## **How You Preserve Data When Region Stops and Restarts**

You can preserve some data when a region stops so that this data is available when the region restarts. You can use global variables to preserve data. You can save global variables that the region reloads when it restarts. Saved global variables are known as persistent global variables.

To preserve data, create global variables with data you want to preserve and save them, for example:

- Use the Persistent Variables Administration option (access shortcut is /PVARS).
- Call the \$CAGLBL procedure using the SAVE option.

**Note:** For information about the \$CAGLBL procedure, see the *Network Control Language Reference Guide*.

## Create Persistent Global Variables Using the User Interface

You can create persistent global variables from the Persistent Variables List panel. The panel also lets you maintain those variables, for example, update, purge, or reload them.

#### To create a persistent global variable using the user interface

1. Enter the **/PVARS** panel shortcut.

The Persistent Variables List panel appears.

2. Press F4 (Add).

The Persistent Variable - Add panel appears.

3. Specify the name of the variable (without its global prefix) and its value. Press F3 (File).

The variable is saved so that it can be loaded the next time the region starts up.

## **Prevent the Reloading of Preserved Data**

If problems occur during region startup because of invalid data being loaded, you can disable the reloading of the preserved data.

To prevent the reloading of preserved data, enter the following command when you start the region:

S rname, PARM='XOPT=NOPVLOAD'

The region starts without reloading the preserved data.

# **Chapter 3: Configuring a Region**

This section contains the following topics:

Region Configuration (see page 25)

How You Use JCL Parameters to Configure a Region (see page 25)

How You Identify the Region to Users (see page 26)

Region Customizer (see page 26)

System Parameters (see page 27)

Capture Messages Not Handled by Rules (see page 29)

**Transient Log Tuning (see page 29)** 

## **Region Configuration**

After you have completed installation and startup, your region is operational at a basic level; however, you must configure it to suit your requirements.

## How You Use JCL Parameters to Configure a Region

JCL parameters enable you to configure a region. You use JCL parameters to set region information. This information includes, for example, the names of your INIT and READY procedures, and the types of security exit to use in your region.

This information is supplied by the PPREF statements in the RUNSYSIN member.

You can also pass this information in the START command using the JCL PARM field. If you specify multiple parameters, separate each with a comma.

Note: For more information, see the Reference Guide.

## How You Display and Change JCL Parameter Settings

You can display the current settings of all the JCL parameters with the SHOW PARMS command from OCS or Command Entry. To change any of these parameters, specify their new values in the RUNSYSIN member and then restart the region.

**Note:** For more information about JCL parameters, see the *Reference Guide*.

## How You Identify the Region to Users

If you have multiple regions or communicate with other regions, you can set the domain ID and put titles on the panels.

## **How You Identify Domains and Panels**

The NMDID JCL parameter identifies the domain ID for each region. If you have multiple regions, specify a different domain ID for each one.

Note: For more information about the NMDID parameter, see the Reference Guide.

You can use the SYSTEMID (System Identifications) parameter group in Customizer to help identify your regions. This parameter group specifies a system identifier that is used when you link to other regions. Specify a different system identifier for each of your regions.

This parameter group also specifies the titles to display on the logon panel and the OCS console panel. These titles help users to identify the region that they have logged on to.

**Note:** The system ID parameter takes effect when the region is initialized.

## **Region Customizer**

Customizer lets you review and update parameter groups.

You use Customizer to initialize and customize your region. Customizer is an initialization facility that lets you implement a region rapidly and easily. Also, Customizer enables you to customize parameters easily at a later stage.

When you first install a product, you set various parameters to get the product up and running. Customizer helps you set up these parameters. An initial dialog is supplied for the first time user, to walk you through the customization process. You are prompted to supply required and optional parameter values.

To access the parameter groups, enter **/PARMS**.

## What Are Parameter Groups?

System parameters are grouped by category (such as Security) in logical parameter groups, to simplify the process of initializing and customizing a region.

Groups of individual parameters translate into one or more of the following:

- SYSPARMS that determine how your region functions
- Global variables that various NCL applications use to control their functions
- Local parameters that define how to implement actions associated with parameter groups

## **System Parameters**

Most customization of your region is performed by using Customizer.

You can also use the SYSPARMS command to customize your region. Each operand of the SYSPARMS command lets you specify options to change and customize the way your region works. For ease of maintenance, you can use the Display/Update SYSPARMS panel, which is accessible by using the /SYSPARM panel shortcut.

#### Notes:

- SYSPARMS set by Customizer parameter groups can only be updated using Customizer.
- For SYSPARMS without a corresponding parameter group, set the SYSPARMS in the INIT and READY procedures so that they are applied when the region starts. You can update them dynamically using the SYSPARMS command.
- For more information about SYSPARMS operands, see the *Reference Guide*.

## Use the SYSPARMS Command

To change a SYSPARMS operand with the SYSPARMS command, enter the following command at the OCS command line:

SYSPARMS operand=value operand=value ...

#### **Example: Display Time on OCS Title Line**

This example sets the time display at the beginning of the OCS title line using the following command:

SYSPARMS OCSTIME=YES

## **Initialization Operands**

There are some SYSPARMS command operands that cannot be changed while the region is operational. These operands must be included in your INIT procedure so that they are executed during initialization.

**Note:** For a complete list of SYSPARMS commands, see the *Reference Guide*.

If you specify new values for these initialization operands, the new values do not take effect until the region is initialized. All other SYSPARMS can be changed during region operation by authorized users.

## **Capture Messages Not Handled by Rules**

If you want to capture certain messages missed by your resource definitions and message rules, use the Unmatched Message Alerting (UMA) feature. By capturing these messages, you can review them later to create rules for them.

## To capture messages not being handled by your resource definitions and message rules

1. Enter the **/PARMS** panel shortcut.

The Parameter Groups panel appears.

2. Enter F MSGAWARENESS.

The cursor locates the MSGAWARENESS parameter group.

3. Enter **U** next to the group.

The group opens for updating.

4. Specify **ACTIVE** in the Unmatched Message Alerting field, and customize the parameters to capture the type of messages you require.

#### **Unmatched Message Alerting Filter**

Specifies the type of messages you want to capture.

#### **Unmatched Message Alerting Options**

Specifies how you want to be notified of the captured messages. The notification can be by one or all of the following methods:

- Raise alerts.
- Log the occurrences of the messages.
- Issue EDS events.

Press F6 (Action).

The region starts to capture the specified messages.

5. (Optional) Press F3 (File) if you want to make the changes permanent.

The group is updated with the changes.

## **Transient Log Tuning**

A *transient log* is a log of activities associated with a resource that is monitored. One transient log exists for each resource definition loaded in a region and exists as long as the definition remains loaded in the region. You can specify the age over which logged activities are deleted to keep their number down. When the default size parameters do not suit your requirements, you can customize them. You can also change the size of the transient logs for selected resources.

## **Customize Tuning Parameters**

The AUTOTABLES parameter group contains the tuning parameters for transient logs. The parameters control the default and maximum sizes, and the deletion of logged activities that are over a specified age. For example, when overflows occur in the logs, you can lower the maximum size while you investigate the cause of the problem.

#### To customize the tuning parameters for transient logs

1. Enter the **/PARMS** panel shortcut.

The Parameter Groups panel appears.

2. Enter F AUTOTABLES.

The cursor locates the AUTOTABLES parameter group.

3. Enter **U** beside the group.

The group opens for updating.

4. Customize the parameters for transient logs to suit your requirements. Press F6 (Action).

The changes are applied in the region.

5. (Optional) Press F3 (File) if you want to make the changes permanent.

The group is updated with the changes.

## **Resize Selected Transient Logs**

After your region operates for a while, you may find that you need to tune the size of some transient logs. You may also find that you need to change the resource definition templates to suit your requirements.

**Important!** Resizing a transient log updates the resource definition. It is recommended that if a resource needs a large transient log size, it should be updated individually. If you have a large system image and you set all resource transient logs to the maximum size, there could be system performance degradation and storage issues.

#### To resize selected transient logs

 Access the list of system images that contain the resources for which you want to resize logs. For example, enter /RADMIN.I.L to access the list of local system images.

A System Image List panel appears.

2. Enter STL beside the required image.

A Set TLog Size Specification panel appears.

3. Select the required resources using the Resource Class and Resource Name fields, specify the required size for their logs, and then press F6 (Action).

A message appears, indicating the number of resource definitions affected.

4. Press F6 (Action).

The resource definitions are updated with the specified size. If the image is active, the affected logs are also resized.

**Note:** For active system images, you can also resize the transient logs from the monitors using the SETTLOG command.

## Resize Multiple Transient Logs in an Image

If the transient logs for certain resources become full, you can resize them from a resource monitor.

**Important!** Resizing a transient log updates the resource definition. It is recommended that if a resource needs a large transient log size, it should be updated individually. If you have a large system image and you set all resource transient logs to the maximum size, there could be system performance degradation and storage issues.

#### To resize multiple transient logs in an image from a resource monitor

1. Enter **SETTLOG** at the Command prompt.

You are prompted to select the image that contains the resources whose logs you want to resize.

2. Enter **S** beside the required image.

A Set TLog Size Specification panel appears.

3. Select the required resources using the Resource Class and Resource Name fields, specify the required size for their logs, and then press F6 (Action).

A message appears, indicating the number of resource definitions affected.

4. Press F6 (Action).

The resource definitions are updated with the specified size, and the affected logs are resized.

# **Chapter 4: Performing Optional** Customization

This section contains the following topics:

Customize Activity Log Settings (see page 33) How to Customize SNA Resource Discovery (see page 35) **SNA Groups** (see page 44)

## **Customize Activity Log Settings**

The activity logs record system messages and messages that occur in the region. You can customize the LOGFILES parameter group to do the following to suit the requirements of your site:

- Disable the logging of system messages
- Allocate additional activity log files

#### To customize the LOGFILES parameter group

1. Enter /PARMS at the prompt.

The Customizer: Parameter Groups panel appears.

2. Enter **U** next to the LOGFILES parameter group.

Fields appear that let you customize the parameter group.

3. Complete the fields, as required, and press F6 (Action).

The new settings are activated.

4. Press F3 (File).

The information is saved.

## **Disable System Message**

By default, system messages are delivered to the activity log.

To disable system message logging, set the value in the Log Operating System Messages? field to NO.

## **Disable Command Logging**

By default, system commands received by the region are delivered to the activity log.

To disable system command logging, set the value in the Log Commands? field to NO.

## **Allocate Activity Log Files**

During initialization, the region is allocated three activity log files. However, you can allocate up to seven files.

**Note:** As supplied, the log file IDs and data set names are, respectively, NMLOG*nn* and *dsnpref*.NMLOG*nn*. (*dsnpref* is the data set prefix used during the setup of the region).

#### To make more than three files available to the region

- 1. Define additional logging data sets.
- After the first Parameter Group panel opens, press F8 (Forward).
   The next panel appears.
- 3. Complete the fields for each file you want to make available. The following is an example:

```
PROD------Page 2 of 3
Command ===>
                                                 Function=Browse
|- LOGFILES - Log File Specifications ------
Log File ID 2 ...... NMLOG02
   Log File Dataset Name 2 .... AUDE0.DENM1.NMLOG02
   File Disposition 2 .....+ SHR
   Log File VSAM Options 2 ...+ LSR SIS DEFER
 Log File ID 3 ...... NMLOG03
   Log File Dataset Name 3 .... AUDEO.DENM1.NMLOGO3
   File Disposition 3 .....+ SHR
   Log File VSAM Options 3 ...+ LSR SIS DEFER
 Log File ID 4 .....
   Log File Dataset Name 4 ....
   File Disposition 4 .....+ SHR
   Log File VSAM Options 4 ...+
```

#### To allocate more files

- 1. Press F8 (Forward).
- 2. Press F6 (Action)

The new settings are applied.

3. Press F3 (File).

The information is saved.

## **How to Customize SNA Resource Discovery**

When you start the region, it automatically discovers the SNA resources controlled by the local VTAM domain. You can customize the discovery process as follows:

- Specify whether a warm or a cold start should be performed for the process.
- Specify how to handle transient resources.
- Specify whether discovery should be performed again when the PPO message flow restarts.
- Specify the resources to discover.
- Specify the information to include when the resource record is built.
- Tune the discovery process.

## Warm and Cold Starts of SNA Resource Discovery

The SNA resource discovery component discovers SNA resources in the local VTAM domain and monitors their status. By customizing the AUTOSNACNTL parameter group, you can start the discovery process in *one* of the following ways:

#### **Warm Start**

Remembers the previous states of all previously discovered resources, compares these to the current conditions, and updates them accordingly. Newly discovered resources are also added.

If the filter criteria ignore resources that were previously discovered, then they are placed into an UNKNOWN state.

#### **Cold Start**

Discovers the network afresh. It clears all discovered resources and discovers them according to the <u>filter</u> (see page 38) criteria. The default value is NO.

## **Control Dynamic and Transient SNA Resources**

During normal VTAM execution, dynamic network resources can be added and deleted. The region receives events when these resources are added by VTAM, and they are automatically discovered and added to the network database.

When resources are deleted by VTAM, you can specify that the resources be also deleted from the region network database. This can be specified to occur during the following:

- Warm starts
- Normal execution

You can also specify response and processing time limits for VTAM events.

These parameters are specified on the second panel of the AUTOSNACNTL parameter group.

## Delete Unknown SNA Resources During a Warm Start

If you want to delete nonexistent SNA resources during a warm start, specify **YES** in the Delete Unknown Resources: During Warm Start Discovery? field. During the next warm start of your region, any resources that are unknown at that time are deleted. You can also specify **NEXT** which deletes unknown resources during the next warm start and the field is then set back to NO for subsequent warm starts.

**Note:** If you specify YES or NEXT, all resources are affected by the deletion regardless of their type.

If you anticipate that there are many network changes to discover, it may be more efficient to specify a cold start for the next discovery rather than specifying NEXT.

# **Delete Unknown SNA Resources During Normal Execution**

If you want the resources that VTAM dynamically deletes to also be dynamically deleted from the network database, specify **YES** in the Delete Unknown Resource: During Normal Execution? field. When an event arrives specifying that a resource has been deleted, the resource and any child resources are deleted. This parameter is only effective on the following types of SNA resource:

- Switched LU
- Switched PU
- PU
- LU
- Local 3270
- Local SNA
- All APPN resource types, including ADJCP, DLURPU, APPNLU, RTP, TGPU, and TRLE

# **Specify Response and Processing Time Limits for VTAM Events**

The following wait intervals can be specified to control the response from and processing of VTAM events:

#### **Display Response Wait Limit**

Specifies how long the system waits for VTAM to respond to a display command. If exceeded, the command is timed out.

## **Delayed Event Processing Wait**

Specifies how long the system waits before it processes IST590I events. This allows time for VTAM to update information before the region accesses it.

# Control Discovery Based on the Status of PPO Message Flow

If PPO message flow stops, the region cannot detect changes in the status of currently discovered SNA resources. When the flow starts again, you can rediscover the resources. Use the Schedule Discovery on PPO Start field to control the rediscovery process.

# Select Which SNA Resources Are Discovered

Through the AUTOSNACNTL parameter group, you can limit the discovered SNA resources.

By default, the region does not discover Rapid Transit Protocol (RTP) PUs for LU-LU sessions and dynamic applications. You can enable the discovery through the Discover LU-LU RTPs? and Discover Dynamic Appls? fields.

**Note:** If you enable the discovery of dynamic applications, we recommend that you define a filter using the NAME keyword to exclude virtual terminal LUs.

You can define an SNA filter to determine which SNA resources are discovered during startup. A supplied sample filter discovers all SNA resources to the PU level. However, by defining your own filter, you can specify which resources are included or excluded during discovery.

**Note:** The default filter does not discover LU, SWLU, and CDRSC resources. The default filter also does not discover any resources in the VTAM state RESET and RELSD.

You can monitor the status of the discovery process by accessing the Network Discovery panel (/SNADMIN.D). This panel shows a discovery log and a discovery status bar.

# Define a Filter

You can define a filter by specifying filter criteria on the third page of the AUTOSNACNTL parameter group.

**Note:** By default, the sample filter appears.

# To specify your own SNA network resource discovery filter

1. Press F4 (Update) and move the cursor to the text editor.

2. Specify your criteria using the following syntax:

```
EXCLUDE [ TYPE={ type | 'type1 type2 ...' }

STATE={ state | 'state1 state2 ...' }

NAME={ mask | 'mask1 mask2 ...' } ]

INCLUDE [ TYPE={ type | 'type1 type2 ...' }

STATE={ state | 'state1 state2 ...' }

NAME={ mask | 'mask1 mask2 ...' } ]

WILDCHAR char
```

#### **EXCLUDE**

Excluded resources are not included in the network model. All identified resources are compared against the EXCLUDE specifications to find which resources are excluded.

#### **INCLUDE**

Included resources are included in the network model. All identified resources are compared against the INCLUDE specifications to find which resources are included.

If used with EXCLUDE, INCLUDE only affects resources that are tagged for exclusion. An excluded resource is tested against the INCLUDE specifications. If any of its attributes match the criteria, then the resource's EXCLUDE tag is removed and it is included in the network model.

# TYPE={ type | 'type1 type2 ...' }

Specifies the resource types to exclude or include.

# STATE={ state | 'state1 state2 ...' }

Specifies the VTAM states of the resources to exclude or include.

**Note:** A list of VTAM states and their corresponding actual states can be accessed by entering the **/SNADMIN.V** path.

# NAME={ mask | 'mask1 mask2 ...' }

Specifies the names of the resources to exclude or include. The name can be a full name or a name mask using the wildcard character defined in the WILDCHAR statement.

**Note:** At least one of the TYPE, STATE, and NAME keywords must be specified. If a NAME is specified, then an associated TYPE must also be specified.

#### WILDCHAR char

If no WILDCHAR statement is specified, then \* is assumed as the wildcard character.

The same keyword cannot be used more than once for each statement. If more than one keyword is specified on a statement then the condition specified is a logical AND of all the keywords specified.

Multiple values for a keyword indicate that any resource that satisfies one of the values is acceptable. For example, there are three names specified for the inclusion of a resource: A, B, and C. A resource with the name A is discovered because it satisfies one of the values. In other words, all resources of the name A, B, or C are discovered.

# **Example: Exclude**

The following example specifies the exclusion of all LU or PU type SNA resources, and any SNA resources in the NEVAC state:

```
EXCLUDE STATE=NEVAC EXCLUDE TYPE='LU PU'
```

# **Example: Include**

The following example specifies the inclusion of all SNA resources with the name IBMCDRSC and of type CDRSC, or with a name that satisfies ASYD11\* and of type PU:

```
INCLUDE NAME=IBMCDRSC TYPE=CDRSC INCLUDE NAME=ASYD11* TYPE=PU
```

# **Example: Exclude with Include**

The following example specifies that all APPLs whose name starts with A, are excluded, but any that are in a VTAM state beginning with ACT are re-included. APPLS that are NOT in a state beginning with ACT, and have a name starting with A, are excluded. All other, non-APPL resource types and states are also included.

```
EXCLUDE TYPE='APPL' NAME='A*'
INCLUDE STATE='ACT'
```

Note: Always code EXCLUDE before INCLUDE.

# **Customize the Information About SNA Resources**

You can customize the information about the SNA resources discovered in the local domain by using the network discovery exit, <code>dsnpref.NMC1.CC18EXEC(\$RSUSRAX)</code>. <code>dsnpref</code> is the data set prefix that is specified during product installation. In this exit, you can specify the associated SNA resource model, another name or description for the resource to make it more identifiable, and user tags.

A sample of the exit is provided. To use this exit, you need an understanding of NCL. The code is commented; however, for more information, see the *Network Control Language Programming Guide* and the *Network Control Language Reference Guide*.

**Important!** If modifications are required, copy the distributed member to the TESTEXEC data set for the region for modification.

The following variables are available to the network discovery exit and let you identify the SNA resources.

# **ZRSNETID**

Specifies the network identifier for a resource.

## **ZRSDOMAIN**

Specifies the network domain for a resource.

# **ZRSRSNAME**

Specifies the SNA resource name.

## **ZRSRSTYPE**

Specifies the SNA resource type. Valid types are as follows:

- ADJCP
- APPL
- APPNLU
- CDRM
- CDRSC
- DLURPU
- LCLSNA
- LCL3270
- LINE
- LINK
- LINKSTA
- LU
- MAJNODE
- NCP
- PU
- RTP
- SSCP
- SWLU
- SWPU
- TGPU
- TRLE

#### ZRSRSNAMEC1...8

Specifies the first to eighth characters of a resource name.

#### **ZRSRSNAMEN1...8**

Specifies the first to eighth characters of the network qualifier portion of the resource name.

**Note:** These variables only apply when the resource is an ADJCP because ADJCPs are stored in the format *network-qualifier.resource-name*, for example, NETQUAL.ADJCPNME.

#### **ZRSPRNAME**

Specifies the parent resource name.

## ZRSPRNAMEC1...8

Specifies the first to eighth characters of the parent resource name.

## **ZRSPRNAMEN1...8**

Specifies the first to eighth characters of the network qualifier portion of the parent resource name.

**Note:** These variables only apply when the parent resource is an ADJCP because ADJCPs are stored in the format *network-qualifier.resource-name*, for example, NETQUAL.ADJCPNME.

#### **ZRSDESC**

Specifies the resource description.

## **ZRSMAJNODE**

Specifies the name of the major node that owns the resource.

#### **ZRSSTATUS**

Specifies the current actual state.

## **ZRSDSTATUS**

Specifies the current desired state.

#### **ZRSVSTATUS**

Specifies the last known VTAM status.

You can use the following variables to customize the information about SNA resources:

## **SYSMSG**

Specifies the error message.

## **ZRSCOLDST**

Specifies Cold start?—NO or YES.

#### **ZRSDESC**

Specifies the resource description.

Limits: 38 characters

#### **ZRSMODEL**

Specifies the model template name.

Limits: 12 characters

#### ZRSUSRTAG1...5

Specifies user-defined resource tags. You can use these tags to make the identification of a resource easier.

Limits: 52 characters

The following return codes must be returned to the caller:

0

Indicates that the request was successful.

1

Indicates that the resource is excluded or deleted.

8

Indicates that an error occurred (the exit is disabled from further calls during the current network discovery).

This exit is invoked only if one of the following conditions is satisfied:

- A cold start is being done.
- A warm start is being done and a new resource is discovered.
- A warm start is being done and an existing resource has a different type, parent, parent type, or major node.
- A major node is activated and a resource is discovered as a result.

# **Tune the Discovery Process**

The Network Discovery Command Thresholds parameters of the AUTOSNACNTL parameter group let you throttle the CPU utilization of the discovery process.

In a large VTAM domain, the discovery process might issue a large number of commands in rapid succession and stress the system such that other functions cannot be performed. You can use these parameters to tune the number of commands that can be issued in a certain time.

# **Discover SNA Resources**

The region automatically discovers the SNA resources on the system when the region starts.

# To rediscover the resources at any other time

1. Enter /PARMS at the prompt.

The Customizer: Parameter Groups panel appears.

2. Enter **U** beside the AUTOSNACNTL parameter group

The AUTOSNACNTL - SNA Automation Specifications panel appears.

- 3. (Optional) Update the discovery criteria.
- 4. Press F6 (Action).

The resources are rediscovered.

# **SNA Groups**

If you want to manage and monitor the SNA resources in logical groups, set up a system image and define the groups.

For more information, see the *User Guide*.

# Chapter 5: Controlling the System Image

This section contains the following topics:

Set the Default System Image (see page 45)
Load a System Image (see page 46)
Global Operation Mode (see page 48)
Shut Down Resources in a Loaded System Image (see page 49)
Restart Resources in a Loaded System Image (see page 50)

# Set the Default System Image

The region loads a system image during initialization. The system image loaded when the region is initialized is controlled by the AUTOIDS parameter group.

## To set up the system image to load on restart

1. Enter /PARMS at the prompt.

The Customizer: Parameter Groups panel appears.

2. Enter **U** beside the \$RM AUTOIDS parameter group.

The AUTOIDS - Automation Identifiers panel appears.

3. Enter? in the System Image Name field.

The ResourceView: System Image List panel appears.

4. Select the System Image that you want to load at restart and press F6 (Action).

**Important!** F6 (Action) replaces the currently-loaded system image. If you do not want to load the system image now, skip this step.

5. Press F3 (File).

The system image loads each time the region starts.

# Load a System Image

You define the operations requirements of the resources to be managed on a system in a system image. You must create a system image definition before you can define the resources you want to manage.

The region loads a system image during region initialization. During operation, you may need to change the system image by loading another image.

**Note:** When you request to load a system image, the \$RMEXSTR exit NCL procedure is executed before the starting process. This procedure may be customized at your site to perform any required tasks before any automated resources are started. The starting process cannot proceed if the exit sets a non-zero return code.

For products that use desired state automation, resources are started according to any relationships defined in the system image, and subject to resource availability.

## To load a system image

1. Enter /RADMIN.I at the prompt.

The ResourceView: System Image List appears.

2. Enter L beside the system image that you want to load.

The LOAD Command Parameter Specification panel appears.

3. Complete the following fields:

# SysName to be Loaded

Enter ? and select a system image from the displayed prompt list.

## **Global Automation Mode**

Specify the global operation mode for your system image.

## Perform COLD Start?

If the Checkpoint Restart Status field is set to ACTIVE, you can enter NO in the Perform COLD Start? field to specify a warm load.

4. Press F6 (Action) to load the system image.

The Command Confirmation panel appears.

5. Enter **CONFIRM** in the Response field.

The system image is loaded.

**Important!** Resources that are monitored by the region are defined to the system image. Loading a system image affects all users of this region and may influence the resources in the system image.

# **Checkpoint Restart Function**

The checkpoint restart function lets you preserve manual overrides across system restarts.

When checkpoint restart is active, any override placed on a resource is stored in the resource definition as checkpoint data. This checkpoint data is applied automatically to the resource when you load the system image with a Warm Start, restoring previously placed overrides.

When checkpoint restart is inactive, any override placed on a resource is not stored as checkpoint data; however, previously stored data is retained. With checkpoint restart inactive, a Warm Start does not apply any stored checkpoint data.

**Note:** Setting checkpoint restart inactive does not clear the stored checkpoint data. If you later set checkpoint restart to active, then a Warm Start applies the previously stored checkpoint data.

If you no longer want to restore previously placed overrides, load the system image with a Cold Start. All checkpoint data is cleared from the resource definitions, and the resources are loaded without overrides.

Cold Start also clears checkpoint data from the following resources:

- Resources in shared system images (both active and inactive) that satisfy the following conditions:
  - The resource has the local system as the home system.
  - The resource is not active on another system.
- Resources in z/VM system images where the z/VM system image has the local system as the home system

**Note:** The local system is where the system image is being loaded.

# **Global Operation Mode**

The global operation mode determines the mode of operation for a loaded (active) system image. Your region can run in a global operation mode of AUTOMATED or MANUAL.

As the name global suggests, the setting of the global operation mode limits the control of all resources defined to a system image. For example, if the global operation mode is MANUAL and the resource operation mode is AUTOMATED, the resource can run in the MANUAL operation mode only. If the global mode is changed to AUTOMATED, then that resource runs in its assigned mode.

You can issue a GLOBAL command from the resource monitor to set the global operation mode. For example, you have finished testing a system image on a development system in the MANUAL operation mode and you want to change the global operation mode to AUTOMATED. If you are experiencing severe problems on a production system, you can change the global operation mode from AUTOMATED to MANUAL.

**Important!** Changing the global operation mode affects all resources that are defined in the loaded system image. If you are changing the mode from MANUAL to AUTOMATED, verify that all resources are defined correctly before the change.

# **Set Global Operation Mode**

#### To set the global operation mode

- 1. From the status monitor, enter **GLOBAL** at the prompt.
  - A Global Command Parameter Specification panel appears.
- 2. Enter **AUTOMATED** or **MANUAL** in the Global Automation Mode field and press F6 (Action).
  - A confirmation panel appears.
- 3. Enter **CONFIRM** in the Response field.
  - The region changes the operation mode of all resources.

## **Example: Set Global Operation Mode**

If the region is running in the MANUAL operation mode and you want to test the effects of automation on the resources in the system, set the global operation mode to AUTOMATED.

Enter the following command at the prompt of the monitor:

GLOBAL MODE=AUTOMATED

The Execute GLOBAL Command panel is displayed. Enter **S** next to the required system image. The region sets all of the resource operation modes to their normal value. This normal value is the mode defined in the resource or set by an override.

# Shut Down Resources in a Loaded System Image

You can use the following commands to shut down the resources defined to a loaded system image:

#### **SHUTSYS**

Shuts down all resources with an operation mode of AUTOMATED.

#### **SHUTFORCE**

Shuts down all resources.

# **Shut Down Automated Resources**

**Note:** This procedure is valid only if the global operation mode is set to AUTOMATED.

## To shut down resources that are in an operation mode of AUTOMATED

1. Enter **SHUTSYS** at the prompt on the status monitor.

If the region is linked to other regions, the Execute SHUTSYS Command panel appears listing the loaded system images in all linked regions. Go to Step 2.

If the region is a standalone region, the Command Confirmation panel appears. Go to Step 3.

2. Enter **S** next to the system image you want to shut down.

The Command Confirmation panel appears.

**Important!** Issuing the SHUTSYS command shuts down all resources that are in the AUTOMATED mode.

3. Enter **CONFIRM** in the Response field.

All automated resources defined to the system image are shut down.

# Shut Down a Manual Resource

To shut down resources that are in the MANUAL operation mode, do *one* of the following:

- Enter MA beside the resource to change its operation mode from MANUAL to AUTOMATED before issuing the SHUTSYS command.
- Enter **T** beside the resource to stop it manually.

# **Shut Down All Resources**

#### To shut down all resources in a system image

- 1. Enter **SHUTFORCE** at the prompt on the status monitor.
  - If the region is linked to other regions, the Execute SHUTFORCE Command panel appears listing the loaded system images in all linked regions. Go to Step 2.
  - If the region is standalone region, the Command Confirmation panel appears. Go to Step 3.
- 2. Enter **S** next to the system image you want to shut down.
  - The Command Confirmation panel appears.
- 3. Enter **CONFIRM** in the Response field.

The resources defined to the system image are shut down.

# Restart Resources in a Loaded System Image

You can restart resources defined to a loaded system image that were shut down using the SHUTSYS or SHUTFORCE commands:

## To restart the resources in a loaded system image:

- 1. Enter **STARTSYS** at the prompt on the status monitor.
  - If the region is linked to other regions, the Execute STARTSYS Command panel appears listing the loaded system images in all linked regions. Go to Step 2.
  - If the region is standalone, the Command Confirmation panel appears. Go to Step 3.
- 2. Enter **S** beside the system image that you want to restart.
  - The Command Confirmation panel appears.
- 3. Enter **CONFIRM** in the Response field.
  - The resources in the loaded system image start.

# Chapter 6: Defining and Maintaining SNA Resource Filters

This section contains the following topics:

SNA Resource Filters (see page 51)

Implement the SNA Resource Filters (see page 51)

Access SNA Resource Filter Definitions (see page 52)

# **SNA Resource Filters**

An SNA resource filter determines which SNA resources appear on the Network Resources panel.

An SNA resource filter enables you to select resources that:

- Satisfy the specified name and type criteria
- Are downstream to a specified resource
- Have a certain status
- Satisfy the specified user-defined resource tag criterion
- Are associated with the specified SNA resource model

# **Implement the SNA Resource Filters**

You can predefine a set of filters. Operators can also define temporary filters.

After you define a filter, that filter can be used to select what information is retrieved for display on the Network Resources panel. For example, you can define a filter that causes only information about resources belonging to a particular branch of your organization to appear.

When you save a filter definition in the knowledge base, the definition propagates automatically to all the connected regions. That is, the definition is global.

# **Access SNA Resource Filter Definitions**

## To access the list of SNA resource filter definitions

1. Enter /SNADMIN.RF.

The SNA Resource Filter List appears.

# Actions Available on the SNA Resource Filter List

You can perform the following actions from the SNA Resource Filter List panel:

# F4 (Add)

Creates a new SNA resource filter.

## S, /, or B (Browse)

Displays the SNA Resource Filter panel in the BROWSE (read-only) mode. If you are authorized to update the definitions, you can press F4 (Edit) to switch to the UPDATE mode.

## U (Update)

Displays the SNA Resource Filter panel in the UPDATE mode.

# C (Copy)

Displays the SNA Resource Filter panel in the COPY mode. You must change the filter name.

## D (Delete)

Deletes an SNA resource filter definition.

# **Define an SNA Resource Filter**

#### To add an SNA resource filter

1. Press F4 (Add) from the SNA Resource Filter List panel.

The SNA Resource Filter panel appears.

2. Complete the following fields:

## Name

Defines the SNA resource filter.

Limits: 0-12 characters, alphanumeric, @, #, or \$. Must not start with a digit.

# Description

Describes the filter.

# **Filter Expression**

Specifies the <u>Boolean expression that defines the filter</u> (see page 54).

Press F3 (File).

The new definition is saved.

# **Define the SNA Resource Filter Expression**

The Filter Expression window on the SNA Resource Filter panel specifies the Boolean expression that defines the filter. The expression uses SNA resource attributes as criteria to determine which SNA resources are selected.

Use the following action codes to help you enter the expression:

## Delete (D)

Deletes the selected line.

## Insert (I)

Inserts a blank line after the selected line.

# Repeat (R)

Repeats a selected line.

## **Example: Select Switched Major Nodes**

The following example shows a filter that selects all switched major nodes.

#### **Example: Select SNA Resources That Are Downstream to a Specified SNA Resource**

The following example shows a filter that selects all LUs downstream to the ASYD22 SNA resource in the NET001 network.

# **Chapter 7: Grouping SNA Resources**

This section contains the following topics:

SNA Groups (see page 55)
When to Define SNA Groups (see page 55)
Access SNA Group Definitions (see page 58)
How to Define an SNA Group (see page 60)
Display an SNA Group on the Graphical Monitor (see page 72)

# **SNA Groups**

An SNA group is an encapsulation of one or more SNA resources that you want the region to manage. You can define multiple groups in a system image with each group representing a number of related SNA resources.

The defined group is a ResourceView definition belonging to the SNAGRP class and you can include it in parent-child relationships with other definitions. You can include it in a service to provide a service-driven operations perspective of your SNA networks.

While monitoring a group, you can zoom to the contained resources and issue commands to act on them.

# When to Define SNA Groups

The region can perform basic initial status management of SNA resources in the VTAM domain. However, you need to include those resources in SNA groups if you want to do the following:

- Provide more detailed management of the desired state of the resources by scheduling resource availability
- Provide a service-driven operations perspective of your networks

SNA groups belong to system images. To create SNA groups, you should define at least one image.

**Note:** For information about how to define system images, see the *Reference Guide*.

# What to Define for an SNA Group

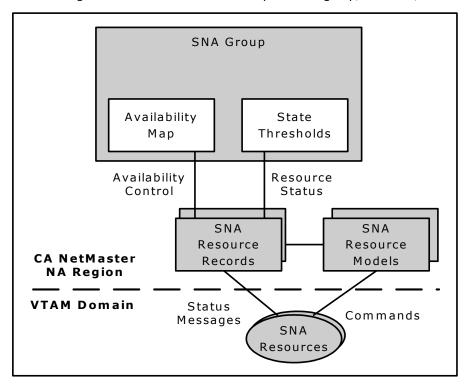
You can define the following information for an SNA group:

- Name, operation mode, and description
- Availability map
- SNA resources that are members of the group and the importance of a member to the group
- State thresholds to indicate how the status of the members affect the actual state and, optionally, logical state of the group
- Exits to invoke before the activation of the group or when the resource goes through specified state changes
- Logging requirements
- Up to two people who can be contacted if the group has operational problems
- Extended function exit to extend the functions that can be performed on the group in the region

# How the Region Maintains the Desired State of an SNA Group

The SNA group definition does not contain any operations methods. Instead, these methods are contained in a set of supplied SNA resource models. Each model defines the methods for a particular type of SNA resource (for example, logical units or physical units); therefore, the methods are generic for an SNA resource type. You can modify these methods.

The following illustration shows the relationship between group, resources, and models.



When the actual state of a group member deviates from the desired state, the automation engine executes the appropriate operations method to return the member to the desired state.

# **Activate an SNA Group**

Activating an SNA group activates all its members.

# **Inactivate an SNA Group**

Inactivating an SNA group inactivates only those members that are not required to be active by other defined resources.

# **Access SNA Group Definitions**

# To access SNA group definitions

1. Enter /RADMIN.R.

The Resource Definition panel appears.

2. Complete the following fields:

# **System Name**

Specifies the name of the system image.

# Version

Specifies the version number of the system image.

Enter **S** beside the SNAGRP class.

The SNA Group List appears.

# **Actions on an SNA Group Definition**

You can perform the following actions from the SNA Group List:

# F4 (Add)

Displays the SNA Group General Description panel for you to define a new SNA group.

## S, /, or B (Browse)

Displays the Panel Display List, which lists the definition panels. When you select a panel, the panel displays the information in the BROWSE (read-only) mode. If you are authorized to update the definitions, you can press F4 (Edit) from a definition panel to switch to the UPDATE mode.

## U (Update)

Displays the Panel Display List, which lists the definition panels. When you select a panel, the panel displays the information in the UPDATE mode.

# C (Copy)

Displays the General Description panel in the COPY mode. Change at least the system image name, system image version, or group name. If you copy the definition to another image, any availability map and processes specified in the definition are also copied if they do not exist already in that image. (Global processes are already visible to the image and are not copied to that image.) If you copy the definition to another image and a definition of the same name exists, you are prompted to either replace the existing definition or cancel the operation. Replacing the definition does not remove any existing parent-child relationships.

## D (Delete)

Displays a deletion confirmation message.

# R (Relate)

Displays the list of immediate parents and children of the definition and enables you to update those relationships.

## **RG (Icon Resource Group)**

Enables you to create a resource group so that the SNA group can be attached to an icon for display on the graphical monitor.

# How to Define an SNA Group

You define an SNA group by entering data on the following panels:

- SNA Group General Description
- SNA Group Filters
- State Thresholds
- State Change Exits
- Automation Log Details
- Owner Details
- Extended Function Exit

# **Define an SNA Group**

#### To define an SNA group

- 1. Press F4 (Add) from the SNA Group List panel.
  - The SNA Group General Description panel appears.
- 2. Complete the fields on this panel and then press F8 (Forward) to access the other panels.
  - Press F1 (Help) for more information about the fields.
- 3. When you have completed the fields on all of the panels, press F3 (Exit).
  - The SNA group is saved.

# **SNA Group General Description**

Use the SNA Group General Description panel to specify the name, the operation mode, and the description of the group.

# **Identify the SNA Group**

Use a meaningful name to identify the SNA group, for example, DUBBOBRANCH. A meaningful name helps you identify the groups when you monitor the groups from the status monitor. The name must contain alphanumeric, @, #, and \$ characters only, but must not start with a digit. The name can be up to twelve characters long.

You can categorize the SNA groups by type. The SNA Group Type field defines a pseudo class name that is displayed on the status monitor instead of the actual SNA group class name. The default is SNAGROUP.

# **Specify the Operation Mode**

Specify an operation mode of AUTOMATED, IGNORED, MANUAL, or OFF in the Operation Mode field. During operation, the specified mode can be restricted by the global operation mode, which is specified in the AUTOIDS parameter group.

# **Attach Availability Map**

You can attach an <u>availability map</u> (see page 91) using the Availability Map field, which defines the changes to the normal availability of the SNA group.

Leave the Map Name field blank if you want to use the default desired state, which can be either ACTIVE or INACTIVE (as set in the AUTOIDS parameter group during region initialization).

**Note:** You can create a new map from the group definition. You can name a new map and define it, or access an existing map, change the name, and update the copy. The map is created in the knowledge base when you save the definition.

# **SNA Group Filters**

Use the SNA Group Filters panel to define the criteria that select the members of the SNA group.

Use the Resource Name, the Resource Type, and the Filter Name fields in any combination to define the selection criteria. You can specify up to 97 independent lines of criteria. For each line, you also specify a weighting to indicate how important the selected resources are to the group.

#### **SNA Resource Name Criterion**

Specify the SNA resource name selection criterion in the Resource Name field. The following two types of generic indicators are available:

- Wildcard characters
- Downstream and upstream indicators

You cannot mix the two types of indicators.

## Wildcard Characters

The wildcard characters that you can use in the Resource Name field are as follows:

- The underline character (\_) represents a single character. For example, NM\_D matches NM1D, NM2D, ...
- The percent character (%) represents zero or more characters. For example, NM%D matches NMD, NM1D, NM11D, ...

The asterisk (\*) is also a valid wildcard character. It behaves the same way as the \_ character when embedded and as the % character at other positions. For example, \* and NM\* are valid values.

# **Downstream and Upstream Indicators**

Downstream and upstream indicators denote whether resources below and above a named resource are to be selected as members. The indicators are as follows:

> Selects the next level of downstream resources only.

>>

Selects all downstream resources.

<

Selects the next level of upstream resources only.

<<

Selects all upstream resources.

The following criteria are valid examples: <PU1, <PU1>, and <<PU1>.

**Important!** When you monitor an SNA group, the group discovers all its members and monitors them. If you are using a >> downstream indicator and a resource becomes available downstream at a later time, the group will not discover it and the resource will not affect the status of the group. To restore such a resource, you can use the BLD or BLDALL command.

# **SNA Resource Type**

Specify the SNA resource type selection criterion in the Resource Type field. The default value is an asterisk (\*), indicating all types.

If you use a downstream or an upstream indicator in the Resource Name field, you can only use the default value in the Resource Type field. You can, however, use a filter to set the type criterion.

# **SNA Group Filter**

You can use a predefined SNA group filter to incorporate more advanced selection criteria. Name the filter in the Filter Name field.

An SNA group filter enables you to select resources that:

- Satisfy the specified name and type criteria
- Are downstream to specified resources
- Satisfy the specified user-defined resource tag criteria

SNA group filters are similar to the SNA resource filters that you use to customize your view of SNA resources.

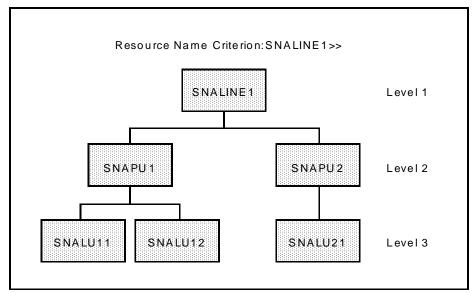
You can use the U (Update Filter) action code to modify a specified filter. You can use the L (List Filters) action code to access the list of defined filters. From the list panel, you can create new filters. The filters use Boolean operators to specify the selection criteria.

# Filter Processing

Usually, a filter applies to all SNA resources selected by the criteria in the Resource Name and Resource Type fields. However, if a >> downstream indicator is used, filtering occurs level by level instead. That is, if no resources that satisfy the filter criteria are found at the next lower level of a branch, filter processing stops.

# **Example: >> Downstream Indicator**

You use the >> downstream indicator to display resources downstream to SNALINE1.



Depending on other criteria, the filter gives the following results:

If the filter looks for resources of the	Then
LU type (RSTYPE="LU")	No resources are selected because no LUs are found on level 2.
PU type (RSTYPE="PU")	SNAPU1 and SNAPU2 are selected.

# **Weight of SNA Group Members**

The weight indicates how important a member is to the SNA group. The valid values are 0% through 100%.

- If the weight is 100%, the actual state of the member affects the actual state of the group directly. For example, if the member becomes inactive, the group assumes the INACTIVE state.
- If the weight is 0%, the member has no effect on the actual state of the group.
- If the weight is between 0% and 100%, the effect of the member on the group depends on the state thresholds.

You can apply the following two types of weights to the members: fixed and proportional.

# **Fixed Weight**

With a fixed weight, every member included in a line entry has the weight specified in the Weight field.

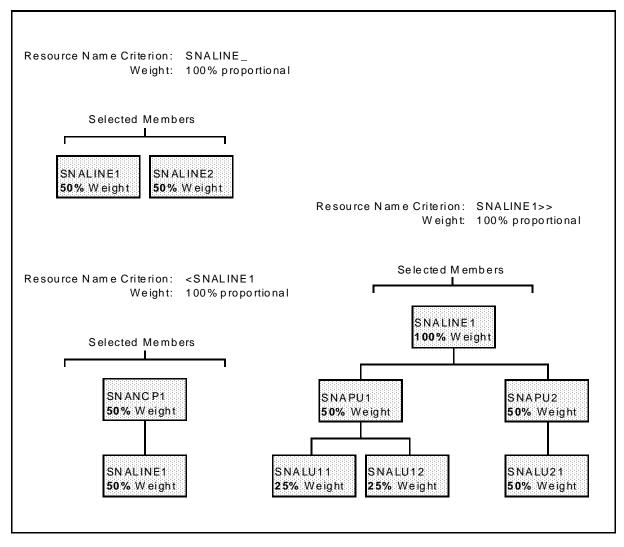
You cannot use a fixed weight if downstream or upstream indicators are used in the selection criteria on that line.

In the following two examples, the weight is 100% fixed:

- If the line entry includes only one member (for example, PU1), the member has 100% weighting in the group.
- If the line entry includes more than one member (for example, PU1 through PU9), each of the members has 100% weighting in the group.

# **Proportional Weight**

You can use the proportional type of weight when the line entry includes more than one member. With a proportional weight, the apportionment of weight to the selected members depends on whether downstream or upstream indicators are used in the selection criteria. The following diagram provides examples of apportionment of a proportional weight.



# Display the Members of an SNA Group

The selection criteria select the members for the SNA group. Only members included in the SNA network model are selected. Therefore, the members can change if the filter used by the network model changes. The network model filter is set in the AUTOSNACNTL region customization parameter group.

**Note:** For more information about the parameter group, see the *Installation Guide*.

You can use the V (View) action to display the members selected by the criteria specified on a line. When a downstream indicator is used, only SNA resources one level down from the selected member are displayed. You can, however, explore further by selectively displaying the resources downstream to a member.

# State Thresholds

The State Thresholds panel defines how the states of the members affect the actual state and, optionally, logical state of the SNA group.

The actual state of the group can be one of the following: UNKNOWN, FAILED, DEGRADED, STOPPING, INACTIVE, STARTING, and ACTIVE.

The state threshold is set by the specified combined weight of the members that have particular states. The region checks the states in the sequence UNKNOWN to ACTIVE until a threshold is found to be equaled or exceeded. That is, if the UNKNOWN state threshold requirement is satisfied, the group takes on the UNKNOWN state irrespective of whether the other threshold requirements are satisfied. If none of the threshold requirements are satisfied, the group takes on the DEGRADED state.

If an SNA resource selection line on the SNA Group Filters panel finds no members, its weight is added to the combined weight for the UNKNOWN state.

The combined weight of the members also affects the logical state of the SNA group. When a logical state threshold percentage is specified, the region compares the desired state with the actual state of each SNA resource in the SNA group to determine their logical states. The combination of these logical states determines whether the SNA group logical state is OK or not OK. The logical state of the SNA group is then derived.

**Note:** When a logical state threshold is specified and there is a resource whose desired state is different from the group desired state, automation is not performed on this resource if it is in a logical state of OK.

The mapping of these special logical states is in the SNA Resource Logical State Normalization table (one of the display attribute tables). To access the list of tables, enter /ASADMIN.A.

# How the Weight Contributions to an SNA Group State Are Determined

The weight contributions to an SNA group state depend on whether any downstream or upstream indicators are used in the SNA resource name criterion.

# **No Indicators**

If downstream or upstream indicators are not used, the weight applied to selected members can be either fixed or proportional. In the following example:

- The specified weight is 30%.
- The selected members are SNALINE1 through SNALINE3.
- The states of SNALINE1 and SNALINE2 are ACTIVE.
- The state of SNALINE3 is INACTIVE.

The weight contributions are as follows:

If the weight is	Then the contribution to the group state is
Fixed	60% ACTIVE and 30% INACTIVE
Proportional	20% ACTIVE and 10% INACTIVE

# **Upstream Indicators**

If upstream indicators are used, the weight applied to selected members must be proportional. The weight is equally distributed between the members. In the following example:

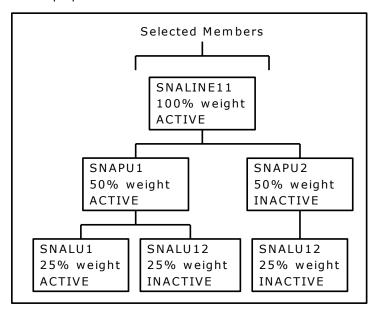
- The specified weight is 100%.
- The selected members are SNANCP1 and SNALINE1.
- The state of SNANCP1 is ACTIVE.
- The state of SNALINE1 is INACTIVE.

The weight contributions are 50% ACTIVE and 50% INACTIVE.

## **Downstream Indicators**

If downstream indicators are used, the weight applied to selected members must be proportional. The following illustration shows how member states contribute to the status of the SNA group. It shows an example of members selected by using a downstream indicator.

In the following illustration, the resource name criterion is SNALINE1>>, and the weight is 100% proportional.



In this illustration, the contributions to the group state are as follows:

- 25% ACTIVE (from SNALU11)
- 75% INACTIVE (from SNALU12 and SNALU21)

The lowest level of SNA resources only contributes to the determination of the state of the SNA group at any single branch.

## **Example: Indicators**

An SNA group contains 10 SNA lines. You want the state of the group to indicate the conditions in the following table:

State	Description
UNKNOWN	The region does not know the state of one or more lines.
FAILED	One or more lines failed.
DEGRADED	One or more lines degraded.
STOPPING	One or more lines are stopping.
INACTIVE	All lines are INACTIVE.
STARTING	One or more lines are starting.
ACTIVE	All lines are active.
DEGRADED	The member states do not satisfy any of the above conditions. For example, five lines are active and five lines are inactive.

You define a 100% proportional weighting distributed across the lines. That is, each line has a weight of 10%.

**Note:** If you use downstream indicators in the selection criteria, the downstream SNA resources affect the group state. Therefore, one line means 10% of the lines, where the contributions to a group state might come from part of a line.

The following table shows the state thresholds that satisfy your requirements:

Actual State	Threshold
UNKNOWN	10%
FAILED	10%
DEGRADED	10%
STOPPING	10%
INACTIVE	100%
STARTING	10%
ACTIVE	100%

# **State Change Exits**

The State Change Exits panel lets you specify the following types of exit processes:

- A process that executes before the SNA group is activated. By using this feature, you can add your own tasks that need to be performed before the region attempts to activate the group members.
- A process that executes on specified state changes. For example, if the SNA group degrades, you might want to invoke a procedure that writes a problem report. You can specify a process to execute on changes to the actual state, the desired state, or the logical state of the group.

# How the SNA Group Logical State is Determined

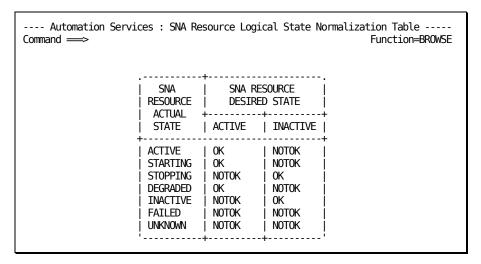
The logical state of an SNA group is normally determined using the Automated or Manual Mode Attributes Table (/ASADMIN.A). You can more accurately determine the logical state of an SNA group by specifying a Logical State Threshold on the State Thresholds panel. This threshold determines, from the combined logical state of each resource, whether the SNA group is OK or not OK. If the group is OK, then conceptually the actual state of the SNA group is said to match its desired state. If the group is not OK, then conceptually the actual state of the SNA group is said to be in a state (ACTIVE or INACTIVE) that is different from its desired state. These states are compared to the Automated or Manual Mode Attributes Table to determine the SNA group's logical state.

## **Example: SNA Group Logical State**

Assume you have specified 10% as the logical state threshold for the SNA group as specified in the previous example.

The actual state of one SNA line is FAILED, desired ACTIVE. Using the specified actual state thresholds, the actual state of the SNA group is FAILED. Because a logical state threshold is specified, the logical state of the SNA group is determined using the following method:

1. The logical state of the failed line is determined using the SNA Resource Logical State Normalization Table as displayed here.



The Actual state of the resource (FAILED) is compared to the desired state of the resource (ACTIVE) to determine the logical state of the resource (NOTOK). In this case, the logical state is not OK.

- 2. Because one NOTOK SNA resource is equal to ten percent, the logical state threshold has been reached and the logical state of the SNA group is not OK.
- 3. Because the SNA group is not OK, it is conceptually known as INACTIVE by the region.

**Note:** If the SNA group is OK, then conceptually it is known as ACTIVE by the region.

4. The region is in MANUAL mode so the logical state of the SNA group is determined from the Manual Mode Attributes Table. Using this table, if the actual state is INACTIVE and the desired state is ACTIVE, the logical state of the SNA group is ATTENTION.

# **Logging Details**

The Automation Log Details panel contains information about the size of the temporary log for the SNA group (called a *transient log*), the destination of the logged information, and the type of information logged.

# **Owner Details**

The Owner Details panel lets you identify up to two people who can be contacted if this SNA group has operational problems.

# **Extended Function Exit**

The Extended Function Exit panel lets you provide additional operator functions. Specify the exit NCL procedure that provides these functions. The procedure is invoked when an operator issues the XF command against the SNA group.

The extended function exit NCL procedure has access to variables with the prefix ZRM or ZRS.

# Display an SNA Group on the Graphical Monitor

After you defined an SNA group, it is immediately visible on the status monitor if the system image that owns it is active. To enable the SNA group to display as an <u>icon in the graphical monitor</u> (see page 103), use the RG action to create a resource group for it. You can then attach the resource group to an icon for display on the graphical monitor.

# Display the Status of Included SNA Resources on Icons

To display the status of included SNA resources on an icon, ensure that the attached resource group contains one and only one member, the SNA group.

If you include more than one member in the resource group, the icon displays normally. That is, it displays the status of its members. For example, if the resource group contains two SNA groups, the icon displays the status of the SNA groups and not the status of the included resources.

# Chapter 8: Managing SNA Resources from a Service Perspective

This section contains the following topics:

Resource Management by Services (see page 73)
Implement the SNA Operations Environment (see page 77)

# **Resource Management by Services**

Basic SNA resource management does not provide a business view of the services you are providing. To carry network management further, you need to group resources into the services they provide.

When you start your region for the first time, you can immediately monitor the SNA resources using the SNA network summary display. By using the supplied default SNA resource models, the region also maintains the desired state of the resources. This desired state is determined by the initial status of a resource in the VTAM domain.

However, you need to define those resources to the knowledge base if you want to provide the following:

- More detailed management of the desired state of the resources
- Management of non-SNA resources
- A service-driven operations perspective of your networks

## **Manage the Desired State of Resources**

Instead of using the initial status of SNA resources in the VTAM domain as the desired state, you may want to manage their desired state in more detail. For example, you may want a resource to be active over certain periods of time and to be inactive over other periods of time. You may also want to include the resource in a service.

If you want to do the above, you must define the affected resources to the knowledge base. To define the resources, define a system image and then define the resources to that image.

You define SNA resources in <u>SNA groups</u> (see page 55), each of which can contain one or more resources. You specify the availability requirements of those groups, and the contained resources inherit that availability.

If you want to include the management of non-SNA resources as part of network operations, you can define them as USRCLS class resources.

**Note:** For information about how to define USRCLS class resources, see the *Reference Guide*.

## Provide a Service-driven Operations Perspective of Your Networks

An SNA group lets you group SNA resources in the local VTAM domain. Where your business function uses resources from multiple VTAM domains, you can include the required SNA groups in the different domains in a single service.

A typical service includes different classes of resources. It may require SNA resources, but it may also require other classes of resources such as system resources, CICS resources, or IMS resources. You can define these other classes of resources if you have the products that support them.

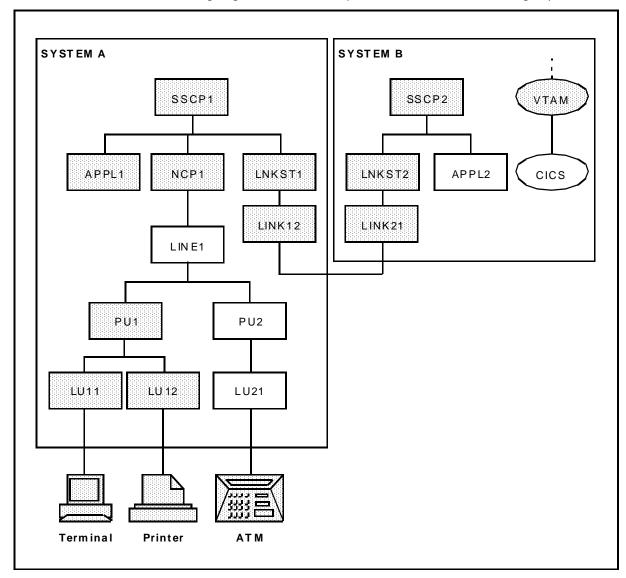
To run your network operations from a service-driven perspective, group related SNA groups and resources in services and specify the availability requirements of those services. The services then ensure the availability of its members.

<u>Defined services</u> (see page 80) can be monitored. You can tell whether a service is healthy at a glance. If an operational problem occurs, you can display the status of the resources to determine which resources are causing the problem.

**Important!** You can define and manage services from focal point regions only. Services are not visible in subordinate regions, but you can include resources managed by a subordinate region in a service.

#### **Example: SNA Network with Groups**

The following diagram shows an example of an SNA network with SNA groups.



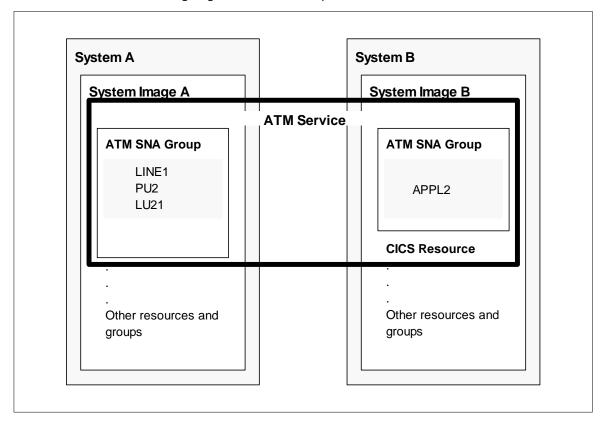
In the network, the CICS application associated with the APPL2 node and the automatic teller machine (ATM) provide a branch service. You want to monitor the health of this service without monitoring the individual resources that make up that service. To provide this function, you need to define a ServiceView service.

**Note:** To define a ServiceView service, you must have both CA NetMaster NA and CA SOLVE:Operations Automation.

Using this example, a typical service definition task might proceed as follows:

- 1. You decide that the service should include the following resources:
  - LINE1, PU2, and LU21 on System A
  - APPL2 and CICS on System B
- 2. To include the identified resources in a service, you must add them to the appropriate system images. Create the image definitions for the two systems if the images are not already defined.
- 3. Define the identified resources to the images. In image A, define an SNA group that includes the LINE1, PU2, and LU21 resources. In image B, define an SNA group that includes the APPL2 resource and a definition for the CICS started task.
- 4. Define a service to include both SNA groups and the CICS resource definition. After you define the service, you have immediate visibility of that service on the status monitor.

The following diagram shows an example of the defined service.



# **Implement the SNA Operations Environment**

To provide a service-driven operations perspective of your networks, you need to implement the automation component of this product and then group resources into the services they provide by creating SNA group and service definitions. You may also want to manage messages by creating EventView rules.

After you have reviewed and decided on your operations requirements, you can start implementing the requirements into your SNA operations environment. This includes defining your automation requirements and monitor views.

**Note:** If you are planning a multisystem environment, you should create the definitions in a master region. When you connect two regions, you also synchronize their knowledge bases. The knowledge base in the source region overwrites the knowledge base in the target region (which is the region from which you attempt the connection). Use the master region as the source. Do not independently create definitions in regions that will later be connected.

## **How to Define Automation Requirements**

To define your automation requirements, you create the system image, services, and EventView rules.

#### To define automation requirements

- 1. Create the system image and the SNA group definitions.
- 2. Load the system image in the region.
- 3. (Optional) Link the regions if you are managing more than one system by using multiple regions and then repeat steps 1 and 2 in those regions.
- 4. (Optional) Create an EventView rule set and associate it with the system image if you want to manage the messages on a system.
- 5. Create services to provide a business view of the managed resources.

#### **Define Monitor Views**

You can customize your monitors to provide different views of the managed systems. You can create the following:

- Filters for the status monitor
- Icon panels for the graphical monitor
- Message profiles for the consolidated console

**Note:** For more information, see the *Administration Guide*.

# **Chapter 9: Implementing Services**

This section contains the following topics:

Services (see page 79)
Access Service Definitions (see page 79)
Service Definition Panels (see page 80)
Maintenance of Service Definitions (see page 87)
Back Up Service Definitions (see page 87)

## **Services**

A service is a collection of resources that support a business or operations function. After you have defined the resources, you group relevant resources in service definitions. You use service definitions to specify the service availability requirements of your organization.

**Note:** You can define and manage services from focal point regions only. Services are not visible in subordinate regions, but you can include resources managed by a subordinate region in a service.

# **Access Service Definitions**

Service definitions are stored in the knowledge base in a structure similar to that of resource definitions. Service definitions belong to the service system image, \$SERVICE. Version 0001 of this image is always active. The definitions have a class of SVC.

To access service definitions, enter /SADMIN.S at the prompt.

The ServiceView: Service List panel appears. The panel lists the services in the knowledge base.

**Note:** To assist with maintenance of your service definitions you can create backup versions of the \$SERVICE 0001 service image.

## **Service Definition Panels**

You can use variables as data in a service definition.

To add a service definition, press F4 (Add) from the Service List panel. A Service General Description panel appears. You define the service by entering data on the following panels:

#### **Service General Description**

You must complete this panel. The panel enables you to identify the service, specify the service operation mode, and define the availability requirements for the service.

#### **Service Filters**

Complete this panel. The panel enables you to select members for the service and specify how important a member is to the service.

#### **State Thresholds**

The panel enables you to define how the statuses of the service members affect the status of the service.

#### **State Change Exits**

The panel enables you to specify state change exit processes that are invoked if the service changes to a given state.

#### **Automation Log Details**

The panel enables you to change the logging requirements.

#### **Owner Details**

The panel enables you to identify up to two people who can be contacted if the service has operational problems.

#### **Extended Function Exit**

The panel enables you to specify an exit NCL procedure that can be used to extend the service functions provided in the region.

# **General Description**

The Service General Description panel specifies the service name, the operation mode, a description of the service, and the availability map to apply.

#### **Operation Modes**

Specify an operation mode of AUTOMATED, IGNORED, MANUAL, OFF, or STARTAUTO. During operation, the global operation mode can restrict the mode specified in the Operation Mode field.

The operation modes have the following effects on a service:

#### **AUTOMATED**

Specifies that the region monitors and automates the control of the service.

When the desired state of the service is set to ACTIVE, the service places an ACTIVE desired state override on its members. The region then determines the actual state of the service from the actual states of the members.

When the desired state of the service is set to INACTIVE, the service removes the ACTIVE desired state overrides from its members. The service acquires an INACTIVE actual state immediately.

#### **IGNORED or MANUAL**

Specifies that the region monitors but relinquishes control of the service to the operators. A service in the IGNORED mode always appears green on your monitors.

When the desired state of the service is set to ACTIVE, the service does not place the ACTIVE desired state overrides on its members. The overrides occur only when an operator starts the service manually by using the A(ctivate) command.

Similarly, setting the desired state of the service to INACTIVE does not affect the members. The members are affected only when an operator stops the service manually by using the T(erminate) command.

#### **OFF**

Specifies that the region does not monitor or control the service. The definition remains in the knowledge base, but the service does not appear on your monitors.

#### **STARTAUTO**

Specifies that the region starts the service in the AUTOMATED mode. As the service achieves its desired state, the region switches the service to MANUAL mode.

#### Define the Availability of the Service

You can use an availability map to define the changes to the normal availability of the service.

In a multisystem environment, you specify a system as the service automation focal point system and the scheduled times refer to the local times on that system. If the map schedules the starting of processes, the processes are started in the region on that system only.

To attach an existing map, enter the name of the map in the Availability Map field. Press F10 (Edit Map) to update the timer details.

Leave the Availability Map field blank if you want to use the default desired state, which can be either ACTIVE or INACTIVE (as set in the AUTOIDS parameter group during region initialization).

The availability of a service overrides the availability of its members. If the service is always a member of another service, let the other service handle the availability of this service. Define the desired state of the service to be always inactive.

**Note:** You can create a new map from the service definition. You can name a new map and define it, or access an existing map, change the name, and update the copy. The map is created in the knowledge base when you save the definition.

#### **Select Service Members**

#### To select service members

1. From the General Description panel, press F8 (Forward).

The Service Filters panel appears. This panel defines the filters that select the members of the service.

- 2. Define the filters by specifying the following criteria:
  - The service class (SVC, if the member is another service) or resource class in the Class field.
  - The name of the member in the Name field. You can use the following wildcard characters:
    - The underline character (\_) represents a single character. For example,
       PROD X3A matches PROD1X3A, PROD2X3A, ...
    - The percent character (%) represents zero or more characters. For example, PROD%X3A matches PRODX3A, PROD1X3A, PROD2X3A, ...
    - You can also use the asterisk (\*) as a wildcard character. An asterisk behaves the same way as the % character, but you cannot have the \* at the beginning of or embedded in the specified value. For example, \* and PROD\* are valid values.
  - The SMF ID of the system that owns the member in the SMF ID field. The default is the SMF ID of the local system.
    - When you have resources with the same identification defined on different systems and you want to include all those resources as members, specify \* in the SMF ID field.
  - The type of resource (as specified in the resource definition) in the Type field. You can use the asterisk (\*) wildcard character by itself or at the end of the specified value.

**Note:** The Type field is irrelevant for a service. Leave the value to the default.

- A weight that indicates how important the member is to the service in the Weight field.
- The type of weight in the Weight Type field.

You can define up to 97 lines of members.

#### Weight of a Service Member

The weight indicates how important a member is to the service. The valid values are 0 percent through 100 percent.

If the weight is 100 percent, the actual state of the member affects the actual state of the service directly. For example, if the member fails, the service fails.

If the weight is 0 percent, the member has no effect on the service.

If the weight is between 0 percent and 100 percent, the effect of the member on the service depends on the <u>state thresholds</u> (see page 85).

You can apply the following types of weights to service members:

#### **Fixed Weight**

With a fixed weight, every member included in a line entry has the weight specified in the Weight field.

In the following examples, the weight is 100 percent fixed:

- If the line entry includes only one member (for example, the PRODA started task on the EASTTEST 0001 system), the member has 100 percent weighting.
- If the line entry includes more than one member (for example, the PRODA started tasks on all the connected systems (SMF ID=\*)), each member has 100 percent weighting.

#### **Proportional Weight**

You can use the proportional type of weight when the line entry includes more than one member. With a proportional weight, every member included in the line entry has an equal proportion of the weight specified in the Weight field. For example, if the weight is 100 percent proportionally applied to two members, each member has 50 percent weighting in the service.

#### View the Service as Defined by the Service Filters

The service filters select the members for a service. Only members defined in active system images are selected. The members can change if the active system images change (for example, when a connected region has a different system image loaded).

To view the members in a service, press the F5 (Model) function key.

## **Merge Two Service Images**

You can merge two service images and replace the active image with a backup version.

#### To merge service images \$SERVICE 0002 and \$SERVICE 0001

- Enter C beside the \$SERVICE 0002 on the ServiceView : Service Image List panel.
   The ServiceView : Service Image Definition panel appears.
- Change the Database Version number to 0001and press F3 (File).
   The Confirm System Image Merge panel appears.
- 3. Enter **YES** in the input field if you want to overlay like-named components.
- 4. Press F6 (Confirm).

The service images are merged.

#### State Thresholds

From the Service Filters panel, press F8 (Forward) to go to the State Thresholds panel. Use this panel to define how the actual states of the members affect the actual state of the service.

The actual state of a service can be *one* of the following:

- UNKNOWN
- FAILED
- ACTIVE
- STARTING
- DEGRADED

You must assign a threshold to the first four states.

Thresholds are evaluated in the order shown. The service takes on the state of the first threshold equaled or exceeded, irrespective of whether other thresholds are Equaled or exceeded. For each actual state, you specify a percentage threshold value that, if equaled or exceeded, causes the service to take on that state (unless a state of higher severity has also satisfied its threshold requirement). This threshold is expressed as a combined weight of the members required to deliver the service.

Each member of the service has a weight associated with it. The weight expresses the level of impact the individual resource has on the threshold calculation for the actual state of the service.

If members are not ACTIVE, you can use their logical state to calculate the threshold for the actual state of the service. In this case, if a member has a logical state of OK, its weight is added to the combined weight for the ACTIVE state. If a member has a logical state of UNKNOWN or STARTING, their weight is added to the combined weight for the corresponding actual state. If a member has any other logical state, their weight is added to the combined weight for the FAILED actual state.

**Note:** If a service filter finds no members, the weight specified in the Weight column on the Service Filters panel is added to the combined weight for the UNKNOWN state.

Using the logical state rather than the actual state to calculate the threshold has advantages. For example, you can shut down a resource that is part of a service without affecting the service. The service sees a logical state of OK, even though the resource is INACTIVE, and treats it as though it is ACTIVE. Alternatively, when a resource fails and you set it to IGNORED, the service sees the resource as ACTIVE (OK), and the service continues unaffected.

## **State Change Exits**

From the State Thresholds panel, press F8 (Forward) to scroll forward to the State Change Exits panel. This panel lets you specify the following types of exit processes:

- A process that executes before the service is started. By using this feature, you can add your own preactivation tasks to the internal service starting method.
- Processes that execute on specified state changes. For example, if a service fails, you can invoke a procedure that writes a problem report. You can specify a process to execute on changes to the actual state, the desired state, or the logical state of the service.

In a multisystem environment, you can specify whether the processes are executed in a specific region only or in all connected regions.

# **Define the Logging Details**

From the State Change Exits panel, press F8 (Forward) to scroll forward to the Automation Log Details Panel. This panel contains the following information:

- Size of the temporary log for the service (known as a *transient log*)
- Destination of the logged information
- Type of information logged

#### **Owner Details**

From the Automation Log Details panel, press F8 (Forward) to scroll forward to the Owner Details panel. This panel lets you identify up to two people who can be contacted if this service has operational problems.

#### **Extended Function Exit**

From the Owner Details panel, press F8 (Forward) to scroll forward to the Extended Function Exit panel. The panel lets you provide additional operator functions. Specify the exit NCL procedure that provides these functions. The procedure is invoked when an operator issues the XF command against the service.

The extended function exit NCL procedure has access to variables that contain all of the service details with the prefix ZRM.

# **Maintenance of Service Definitions**

You can browse, update, copy, and delete service definitions from the Service List panel.

**Note:** If you only want to hide a service definition from the region, set the operation mode to OFF. The definition remains in the knowledge base but is not used.

# **Back Up Service Definitions**

To assist you with the maintenance of your service definitions, you can create backup versions of your service image. By creating a backup version of your service image or definitions, you can perform the following:

- Update service definitions in any version of a service image
- Restore a service definition from a backup service image
- Merge two versions of a service image

#### To create a backup version of a service image

1. Enter /SADMIN.SI at the prompt.

The service image list appears.

**Note:** If you have not created a backup before, there is only one service image listed: \$SERVICE 0001. The active service image can be \$SERVICE 0001 only. \$SERVICE 0001 cannot be deleted.

2. Enter **C** next to the service image you want to copy.

The ServiceView: Service Image Definition panel appears.

- Enter a new Database Version, Short Description, and (optionally) a Long Description.
- 4. Press F3 (File).

A copy in progress panel opens while the copy occurs. The Service Image List appears with the backup version displayed in the list.

## **Update Service Definitions in a Backup Service Image**

You can access a list of all the service definitions in any version of a service image. From this list you can update any service definitions contained in the service image.

#### To update a service definition in the \$SERVICE 0002 backup image

 Enter L (List Services) beside the \$SERVICE 0002 service image in the Service Image List.

The ServiceView : Service List panel appears showing the service definitions in that service image.

**Note:** You can access the list of service definitions for another version of the service image by changing the version number on the Service Image List panel and pressing Enter.

2. Enter **U** beside the service definition that you want to update.

The ServiceView: Panel Display List appears for that service definition.

- 3. Update the service definition, as required.
- 4. Press F3 (File) to save the changes.

The ServiceView: Service List panel appears.

# Restore a Service Definition from a Backup Service Image

If you have made changes to a service definition and you are having trouble with its implementation, you can restore it from a previous version of the definition.

# To restore service definition SERV01 from \$SERVICE 0002 service image to \$SERVICE 0001

- 1. Enter **C** beside SERV01 in the ServiceView : Service List.
  - The ServiceView: Service Image Definition panel appears.
- 2. Change the Database Version from 0002 to 0001 and press F3 (File).
  - Because there is already a copy of the service in the target service image, the Confirm Copy Replace panel appears.
- 3. Press Enter to confirm the replace or F12 (Cancel) to cancel the request.
  - The ServiceView: Service List panel appears.

# Chapter 10: Implementing Availability Maps

This section contains the following topics:

Availability Maps (see page 91)

How You Implement Availability Maps (see page 92)

Access Availability Map Definitions (see page 93)

Create an Availability Map (see page 93)

<u>Timer Information</u> (see page 96)

Attach a Service or Resource Definition to an Availability Map (see page 97)

Detach Service or Resource Definitions from an Availability Map (see page 98)

Maintenance of Availability Map Definitions (see page 98)

# **Availability Maps**

An availability map enables you to define the availability requirements for a service or resource. An availability map also enables you to schedule the execution of processes. You can add an availability map at any time. The map becomes effective as soon as you attach services or resources to it.

# **How You Implement Availability Maps**

The desired state information specified in a service or a resource definition determines its status. The definition can include an availability map that schedules changes to the default availability. Timers activate these changes.

**Note:** The default desired state determines the default availability of a service or resource. The state is set in the AUTOIDS parameter group during region initialization. The Customizer: Parameter Groups panel lists the region parameter groups. Enter the **/PARMS** shortcut to access the panel.

Availability maps enable you to schedule changes to the default availability requirements of one or more services or resources. The service image and each system image have its own set of availability maps. You define an availability map (for example, MAP1) and attach as many services or resources to the map as required. Because availability maps are not limited to a seven-day cycle, you can define changes to the availability requirements that apply daily, on the same day every week, on the same date every month, for a specific date and time, and so on. You can also suppress changes temporarily and update timer information at any time.

An availability map has two parts: a map definition and a timer definition. The map definition contains information about the map itself. The timer definition contains information about when to change the desired state of the services or resources that use this map. The timer definition can also contain information about when to change the operation mode and when to start processes to perform special tasks.

Creating an availability map has the following two stages:

- 1. Creating an availability map.
- 2. Attaching services or resources to a map.

**Note:** For information about how availability and resource relationships affect operations, see the *Reference Guide*.

# **Rules for Availability Map Definitions**

The following rules apply to availability maps:

- If the timer definition is blank, it means that default availability requirements apply to all the services or resources attached to that map.
- A map only applies to the service image or the system image for which it is defined.
- Map names must be unique in the image to which the map applies.

# **Access Availability Map Definitions**

You can define as many maps for a system image as you want. After the map is defined, you can define timer information and attach services or resources to the map. Use the Availability Maps option to create and maintain availability map definitions.

The service image and each system image have its own set of availability maps.

#### To access service availability map definitions

1. Enter /SADMIN.A at the prompt.

The Availability Map List appears.

#### To access resource availability map definitions

1. Enter /RADMIN at the prompt.

The Resource Administration menu appears.

2. Enter **A** at the prompt and the name and version of the system image that owns the maps you want to create or access, and then press Enter.

The Availability Map List panel appears. This panel lists the availability maps for the specified service or system image.

**Note:** To display the maps owned by another system image or resource, you can enter another name (resources only) or version number at the top of this panel.

# **Temporary Availability Maps**

A temporary availability map is an availability map created from the status monitor to override the current map attached to a service or resource. A temporary map has an expiry time when the map is deleted automatically. You can use a temporary map as any other map, remembering that it has a defined life time.

# **Create an Availability Map**

#### To create an availability map

1. Press F4 (Add) from the Availability Map List panel.

The Availability Map panel appears.

2. Specify the timer information that sets the availability requirements. For information about the fields, press F1 (Help).

#### **How You Define Timers**

You can define two types of timer information:

- For all services or resources, define the timer, leaving the SVC/Resource Name field blank. This timer information applies to any services or resources attached to the map.
- For a specific service or resource, define the timer with the name of the service or resource in the SVC/Resource Name field. This timer information applies to the named service or resource if the service or resource is attached to the map.

You can use the action codes to repeat or delete rows of information, or to insert blank lines.

Use the following values in the Day field to simplify data entry:

\*

Repeats the timer for all days (that is, Monday through Sunday).

#### W/D

Repeats the timer for weekdays (that is, Monday through Friday).

#### W/E

Repeats the timer for weekends (that is, Saturday and Sunday).

Leave the Day field blank if you fill in the Date field. If the Mode field is left blank, you do not override the operation mode.

#### **Scheduling of Processes**

If you want the map to start processes at defined times, press F11 (Right) to display the fields for specifying processes.

#### **Manual Overrides**

You can use a timer to reset manual desired state and operation mode overrides. Specify RESET in the Des.State and in the Mode fields.

When a manual override exists, the scheduled change to the overridden parameter cannot be made. If you want to help ensure that the scheduled changes are made, reset the overrides first.

**Note:** For more information about how to perform manual overrides, see the *User Guide*.

## **Availability Map Example**

This example describes how to define an availability map for services.

In this example, you define a map for the defined services to schedule such things as availability during holidays and when system maintenance is required. The map is named MAP1.

Use the **/SADMIN.A** path and the F4 (Add) function key to access the Availability Map panel. On the panel, you type the following values:

- MAP1 in the Name field
- A description in the Description field
- **N** in the Expire Delete field to retain expired timer events (These events occur on specific dates.)

You can now specify timer details.

You want to stop all services on 27 November 2012 at 0830 hours for system maintenance and reactivate all services at 1600 hours on the same day. (Resources that belong to the services have a scheduled INACTIVE desired state for all times. That is, the services control the availability of those resources by using the ACTIVE desired state overrides.)

In the Timer Details box, type the information about the date, the time, the change to the status, and whether to process this change. To have a change processed, specify **ON** in the Status column. The following shows the completed Availability Map panel.

```
PROD---------- Automation Services : Availability Map -------Function=ADD
Command ===>
                                                    Scroll ===> CSR
 Availability Map -----
 System Name .. $SERVICE Version .. 0001 Last Updated By
 Name ..... MAP1
                          at on
 Description .. SERVICE MAP 1
                                           Expire Delete ... NO
 Timer Execution Control System .....+ CO71 (Service/Shared Images)
 Attached Resources ...
 Timer Details -----
                                         D=Delete I=Insert R=Repeat
    Day Date
                 Time
                         SVC/Resource Name Des.State Mode
                                                           Status
    MON 27-NOV-2012 08.30.00
                              INACTIVE
                                                           ON
    MON 27-NOV-2012 16.00.00
                                         ACTIVE
                                                           ON
  F1=Help
            F2=Split
                      F3=File
                                F4=Save
                                          F5=NextTmr F6=Sort
                                         F11=Right F12=Cancel
  F7=Backward F8=Forward F9=Swap
```

## **Timer Information**

The Next Timers Execution Time panel lists information about upcoming changes to availability. You can obtain different views of this timer information by:

- Viewing the timer information in all availability maps for the services or in a system image
- Viewing the timer information in one availability map

The views list the next invocation of the defined timers. For example, a timer that executes every Monday is listed once only.

#### **View All Timer Information**

You can view a list of the upcoming changes scheduled in all maps defined in the service image or in a system image. The changes are listed in chronological order.

To view this information from the Availability Maps List panel, press F12 (NextTmr).

A Next Execution Time panel appears, listing the upcoming changes for all the maps.

## View the Timer Information in One Availability Map

You can view a list of the upcoming changes scheduled in an individual map. The changes are listed in chronological order.

#### To view the timer information in an availability map

- From the Availability Map List panel, enter N next to an availability map to select the NextTimers action.
- From an Availability Map panel (while you are working on an availability map definition, a resource definition, or a service definition), press F5 (NextTmr).

A Next Execution Time panel appears, listing the upcoming changes for the selected map.

# Attach a Service or Resource Definition to an Availability Map

After a map is defined, you can attach service or resource definitions by using:

- The Availability Map List
- The service or resource definition panels

# To attach a service or resource definition to an availability map from the Availability Map List

1. Enter **AR** next to the availability map to which you want to add a resource or service.

The Attach Resources panel appears.

2. Enter **S** next to the resource or service that you want to add to the availability map.

The Attach Resources Results panel appears, which tells you whether the operation was successful.

3. Press F3 (File).

The Availability Map List appears.

**Note:** To display the resources or services that are attached to an availability map, enter **LR** next to the availability map in the list.

#### To attach a service or resource to a map while you are working on the definition

- 1. Select the General Description panel.
- 2. Enter the name of the availability map in the Availability Map field, and press F3 (File).

The details are saved.

# Detach Service or Resource Definitions from an Availability Map

You can detach service or resource definitions from an availability map (for example, if you want to change a resource definition and test it separately).

You can detach a service or a resource from an availability map by using:

- The Availability Map List
- The service or resource definition panels

#### To detach a service or resource from an availability map from the Availability Map List

- Enter /SADMIN.A (for services) or the /RADMIN.A (for resources) at the prompt.
   The Availability Map List panel appears.
- Enter LR next to the map from which you want to detach services or resources.A list of the attached services or resources appears.
- 3. Enter **DT** next to the services or resources that you want to detach from the map and press Enter.

The services or resources are detached from the map.

#### To detach a service or a resource from a map while you are working on the definition

- 1. Select the General Description panel.
- 2. Remove the name of the availability map from the Availability Map field and press F3 (File).

The service or resource is detached from the map.

# **Maintenance of Availability Map Definitions**

You can browse, update, copy, and delete timer information and availability map definitions from the Availability Map List panel.

# Chapter 11: Implementing the Graphical Monitor

This section contains the following topics:

**Graphical Monitor (see page 99)** 

How You Customize the Graphical Monitor (see page 99)

Resource Groups for Icons (see page 100)

Icons (see page 103)

Icon Panels (see page 108)

How You Edit a Generated Icon Panel (see page 115)

Set Up Default Icon Panel for Your Users (see page 116)

**Example: Graphical Monitor Configuration** (see page 116)

# **Graphical Monitor**

The graphical monitor presents the status of resources in icons on an icon panel.

You customize the graphical monitor by using icon panels. You can change the icon panel to obtain a different view of the monitored systems and networks. By zooming (Z) in on an icon, you can selectively view the group of resources that it contains.

The graphical monitor monitors groups of resources as a single entity.

# **How You Customize the Graphical Monitor**

To customize the graphical monitor, you define resource groups, icons, and icon panels. You arrange icons on icon panels and attach resource groups to the icons so that each icon on the panel represents a group of resources. After you generate an icon panel, an operator can use that panel to customize the graphical monitor.

You generate an icon panel as follows:

- 1. Define the required resource groups.
- 2. Define the icons to use on an icon panel.
- 3. Define the icon panel.
- 4. Place the defined icons on the panel and attach resource groups to them.

When you save a resource group, icon, or icon panel definition, or generate an icon panel description file, it propagates to all the connected regions. That is, the definition of the generated icon panel is global.

# **Resource Groups for Icons**

A resource group represents a group of resources that you have defined in the knowledge base. To define a resource group, use *one* of the following methods:

#### Specify an Icon Panel

The panel displays icons representing other resource groups. Use the Zoom Icon Panel Definition panel to specify the icon panel.

#### ■ Specify a Group of Resources

You can identify up to 16 resources by class and name. Thus, the identified resources are independent of system images. In a multisystem environment, the specified class and name points to resources in all the system images that are loaded in the linked regions. You can, however, specifically exclude remote resources. Use the Resource Filter Definition panel to specify the resources to group.

#### ■ Specify a Resource Group Filter

A resource group filter uses a Boolean expression to define a group of resources. You group the resources by their static attributes such as names and parent system images. Use the Resource Group Filter Definition panel to define the Boolean expression.

# **Access Resource Group Definitions**

The Resource Groups List displays the list of resource group definitions in the knowledge base. You can add a new definition, or browse, update, copy or delete an existing definition.

To access resource group definitions, enter /GADMIN.G at the command prompt.

The Resource Group List appears.

## Add a Resource Group Definition

#### To add a resource group definition

1. Enter /GADMIN.G at the prompt.

The Resource Group List appears.

2. Press F4 (Add) to add a group definition.

The Resource Group Definition panel appears.

**Note:** If you change your mind and do not want to add the group, press F12 (Cancel) to cancel the operation any time before Step 6.

- 3. Complete the Name and Description fields to identify the new group.
- 4. Select *one* of the following options to define the group:
  - Select option A to specify an icon panel.
    - The Zoom Icon Panel Definition panel appears. Proceed to Step 5a.
  - Select option B to specify a group of resources by class and name.
    - The Resource Filter Definition panel appears. Proceed to Step 5b.
  - Select option C to specify a resource group filter.
    - The <u>Resource Group Filter Definition panel</u> (see page 102) appears. Proceed to Step 5c.

**Note:** Options B and C are related. You can use option B to specify the services and resources in the group directly. If you then select option C, the specification defined by using option B is expanded into a Boolean expression.

- 5. Depending on the option you select, proceed as follows:
  - a. Specify the name of a generated icon panel in the Zoom Icon Panel Name field. You can enter a question mark (?) in the field to access the icon panel prompt list from which you can select the required panel.
    - After you specify the name, proceed to Step 6.
  - b. Identify the resources by class and name in the ClassDsc and Resource Name fields. You can enter a question mark (?) in the fields to access the resource class and resource name prompt lists from which you can select the required class and name.
    - If you want to exclude the resources from remote systems, specify **Y** (yes) in the Exclude Remote System Resource field. The default is NO.
    - After you identify the resources, proceed to Step 6.
  - c. Press F10 (EditFltr) to edit the filter. See the online help for a description of the fields.
    - Specify the <u>Boolean expression</u> (see page 102) in the Filter Expression window to define the filter.
    - Press F3 (OK) to exit the edit mode, then proceed to Step 6.
- 6. Press F3 (File) to file the new definition when you finish defining the group.

#### **Resource Group Filter Definition Panel**

The Resource Group Filter Definition panel specifies the details of a resource group.

The panel displays two windows. The Filter Definition window identifies the filter, and the Filter Expression window specifies the Boolean expression of the filter.

#### **Example: Resource Group Filter Definition Panel**

This example defines a group that contains all started tasks except those resources with a name of PCICS1.

### **Resource Group Filter Expression**

Use the Filter Expression window on the Resource Group Filter Definition panel to specify the Boolean expression that defines the filter. The expression uses resource attributes to determine what belongs to the group.

Use the following action codes to help you enter the expression:

### D (Delete)

Deletes the selected line.

#### I (Insert)

Inserts a blank line after the selected line.

#### R (Repeat)

Repeats a selected line.

## **Maintenance of Resource Group Definitions**

You can browse, update, copy, and delete group definitions from the Resource Group List panel.

**Note:** During an update, if the resources in the resource group are specified by using option C, you have no access to option B.

Except as noted above, you can change the method of definition during an update. Saving a definition by a new method automatically overrides the definition by the current method.

## **Icons**

An icon is a graphic that you can use to represent resource groups on the graphical monitor. You use icons to build icon panels. You position one or more icons on a panel and attach resource groups to the icons, one group for each icon. When used, an icon displays a status determined by the status of the underlying group members. An operator can zoom in on an icon using the Z (Zoom) command. This action displays another icon panel or a group of resources in the Status Monitor, as determined by the attached resource groups. Use the Icon Editor to define an icon.

#### **Access Icon Definitions**

To access icon definitions, enter /GADMIN.I at the prompt.

The Icon List panel appears.

The panel displays the list of icon definitions in the knowledge base. You can add a new definition, or browse, update, copy or delete an existing definition. You can also edit a definition from the Icon Panel Generator panel.

### **Define an Icon**

You use icons to build the panel for your graphical monitor.

#### To define an icon

1. Enter /GADMIN.I at the prompt.

The Icon List panel appears.

2. Press F4 (Add).

The Icon Editor panel appears.

3. Complete the following fields:

#### Name

Specifies the name of the icon.

#### Description

Describes the icon.

#### Icon Height

Specifies the height of the icon in lines.

#### Icon Width

Specifies the width of the icon in characters.

**Note:** If you change the default size, press Enter to update the shape of the icon in the Edit Area window.

Specify the values you want to display (see page 106) on the icon.

4. Press F3 (File).

The new definition is saved.

#### **Icon Editor Panel**

The Icon Editor panel specifies the details of an icon. The operation you are performing is displayed at the top right of the panel, for example, Function=UPDATE.

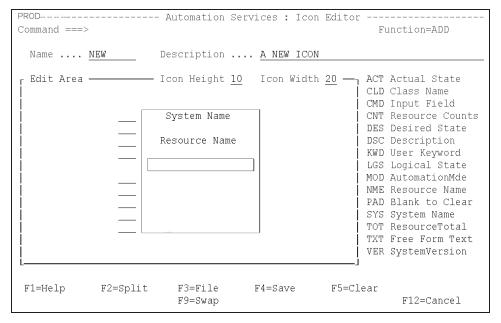
The panel specifies the following information:

- Name and description of the icon
- Size of the icon (height and width)
- Actual icon representation

The Edit Area window specifies the values you want to display on the icon.

#### **Example: Icon Editor Panel**

This example defines a resource icon.



#### How You Edit the Icon

Use the Edit Area window on the Icon Editor panel to specify what you want to display on the icon.

The icon contains the number of lines specified in the Icon Height field. Use the three-character codes listed to the right of the Edit Area window to specify the values you want displayed on the icon. To use a code, enter the code in a line field. You can use the code on any line, irrespective of whether the line is blank or not. Except for the TXT code, executing a code on a line overrides what is already there.

You can type codes in more than one line field, then press Enter to execute the codes.

Pressing F5 (Clear) clears the icon. Use the PAD code to clear a line.

Note: For information about the codes, see the online help.

#### **Icon Definition Example**

In this example, an icon, EFTPOS, is defined for the group of services and resources that support electronic funds transfer. The finished icon as it appears to an operator is shown in the following figure:

Electronic Funds Transfer

Actual State: DEGRADED
Desired State: ACTIVE

Operation Mode: AUTOMATED

Worst State Member System: \$SERVICE Name: CREDITAUTH

#### To define the icon

1. Enter /GADMIN.I at the prompt.

The Icon List panel appears.

2. Press F4 (Add).

The Icon Editor panel appears.

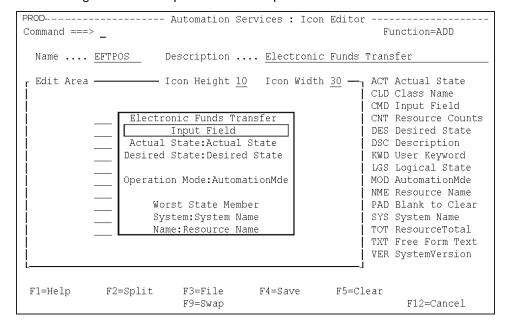
- 3. Enter **EFTPOS** in the Name field and a description in the Description field, for example, Electronic funds transfer.
- 4. You want the icon size to be 10 lines by 30 characters. Change the icon width to 30, and press Enter to update the shape of the icon.
- 5. Enter **TXT** in the first line field. A text field appears in the icon.

- 6. Enter ELECTRONIC FUNDS TRANSFER in the text field.
- 7. Enter **CMD** in the second line field to create the command entry field.
- 8. Enter **ACT** in the third line field.
- 9. To add the description to the field, enter **TXT** in the line field. Enter **Actual State** in the displayed text field. A colon is inserted automatically after the entered text.
- 10. Repeat steps 8 and 9, using the appropriate codes, for the following information:
  - Desired state (line 4)
  - Operation mode (line 6)
  - Identity of the group member that has the worst logical state (lines 9 and 10)

Use steps 5 and 6 to enter the Worst State Member label (line 8).

11. Press F3 (File) to file the definition when you finish with the panel.

The following shows the completed Icon Editor panel.



#### **Maintenance of Icon Definitions**

You can browse, update, copy, and delete icon definitions from the Icon List panel.

## **Icon Panels**

An icon panel defines what is displayed on the graphical monitor. You arrange icons on the panel and attach resource groups to the icons.

You can define your own icon panel or select one of the predefined panels provided with your product.

When you create an icon panel, you create an icon panel definition and the icon panel description file. An operator uses the panel to customize the graphical monitor. You can generate an icon panel (that is, the description file) only if all the icons on the icon panel definition have attached resource groups. Use the Icon Panel Generator to define and generate the icon panel.

**Important!** Icon panels defined on a 3270 Model 4 or equivalent terminal cannot be used on Model 3 and Model 2 terminals. Icon panels defined on a Model 3 terminal cannot be used on Model 2 terminals.

#### **Access Icon Panel Definitions**

To access icon panel definitions, enter /GADMIN.P at the prompt.

The Icon Panel Definition List panel appears. The panel displays the list of icon panel definitions in the knowledge base. You can add a new definition, or browse, update, copy, or delete an existing definition.

#### **Define an Icon Panel**

When you define an icon panel, you can create a new panel or select a pre-defined panel. A default panel is distributed for your product; however, if you have installed more than one product in your environment, \$RMDYNAMIC is your default icon panel.

**Note:** \$RMDYNAMIC is the default icon panel when more than one product is present in a region. It dynamically displays one icon per product found on the region. As such, it is different to other icon panels and should not be edited or regenerated by users. If it is regenerated in error, panel \$RMDYNAMICBU is available in the ICOPANL data set to use to recover \$RMDYNAMIC.

#### To define an icon panel

1. Enter /GADMIN.P at the prompt.

The Icon Panel Definition List panel appears.

- 2. Do one of the following:
  - Press F4 (Add) to add a new icon panel definition.

The Icon Panel Generator Initial Help panel appears.

■ Select one of the pre-defined defaults for your product.

The Icon Panel Generator Initial Help panel appears.

**Note:** Pressing F4 (Remove Help Screen) exits and removes permanently the help panel. That is, the help panel does not appear the next time you work on an icon panel definition.

3. When you finish reading the help text, press Enter.

The Icon Panel Generator panel appears.

If you selected one of the pre-defined defaults, go to Step 5.

If you are defining a new icon panel, go to Step 4.

4. Complete the following fields:

#### Name

Specifies the name of the icon panel.

#### Description

Describes the icon panel.

- 5. Use the function keys to create or edit your panel. The left limit of the icon placement area is column 2, and the top limit of the icon placement area is row 5. The right and bottom limits are dependent on the size of your screen and the width and height of the icon.
- 6. Press F3 (File).

The new icon panel is generated.

**Note:** If an icon in the panel definition does not have an attached resource group, you cannot generate the new panel. A message is displayed on your screen to this effect. You can either attach any missing resource groups so that you can generate the panel or press F3 (File) again to file the definition without generating the panel.

### **Icon Panel Generator Panel**

The Icon Panel Generator panel specifies the details of an icon panel. The operation you are performing is displayed at the top right of the panel.

The panel specifies the following information:

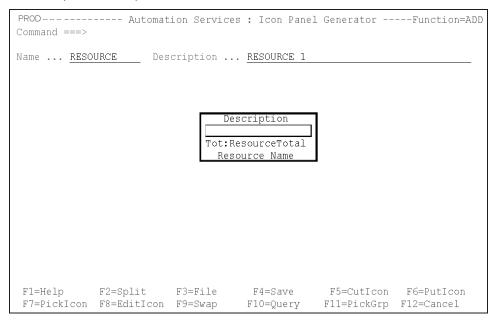
- Name and description of the icon panel
- Actual icon panel representation

The area from Column 2 to the right and from Row 5 down contains the icons you want to display on the graphical monitor.

Use the function keys on the Icon Panel Generator panel to specify what you want to display on the graphical monitor.

### **Example: Icon Panel Generator Panel**

This example defines a panel with one icon.



#### Add an Icon to the Icon Panel

To build an icon panel for your graphical monitor, you add icons to the panel.

#### To add an icon to the icon panel

- 1. Move the cursor to fix the position of the top left corner of your icon. You must place the cursor in an area not already occupied by another icon.
- 2. Press F7 (Picklcon) to display the list of defined icons.

The Icon List panel appears.

3. Enter **S** beside the icon you want to add to the icon panel.

The Icon Panel Generator panel appears. The selected icon is positioned with its top left corner at the cursor.

**Note:** After you pick an icon, you can move the cursor to another position and press F6 (Putlcon) to duplicate the icon on the icon panel. You can thus quickly position multiple icons with the same attributes on the panel.

4. Press F11 (PickGrp) to attach a resource group to the icon.

The Resource Groups List panel appears.

5. Enter **S** beside the group you want to attach to the icon.

The Icon Panel Generator panel appears. You have added an icon with an attached resource group to the icon panel.

# Attach a Resource Group to an Icon on the Icon Panel

You can attach resource groups to icons on the Icon Panel Generator panel. You can change a resource group attachment by attaching another group to the icon.

# To attach a resource group to an icon on the icon panel

- 1. Move the cursor in the icon to which you want to attach a resource group.
- 2. Press F11 (PickGrp).

The Resource Groups List panel appears.

3. Enter **S** beside the group you want to attach to the icon.

The Icon Panel Generator panel appears.

# Duplicate an Icon on the Icon Panel

**Note:** Duplicating an icon on the icon panel copies only the icon, not the attached resource group.

# To duplicate an icon on the icon panel

- 1. Move the cursor inside the icon you want to duplicate.
- 2. Press F7 (Picklcon).

The icon is highlighted

3. Position the cursor to where you want to place a copy of the icon and press F6 (Putlcon).

The icon is placed at the cursor.

**Note:** The cursor position fixes the top left corner of the duplicate icon.

## Move an Icon on the Icon Panel

# To move an icon to another position on the icon panel

- 1. Move the cursor in the icon you want to move.
- 2. Press F5 (Cutlcon).

The selected icon is no longer displayed.

3. Move the cursor to fix the position of the top left corner of the icon being moved and press F6 (Putlcon).

The icon appears at the position of the cursor.

#### Edit an Icon on the Icon Panel

You can edit an icon from the Icon Panel Generator panel. Editing enables you to update the original icon or create a new copy of the icon.

Updating an icon from the Icon Panel Generator panel updates the icon definition in the knowledge base and the selected icon only. If there are other icons in the panel definition that use the same icon definition, these other icons are not updated as long as you remain in the panel definition. You can, therefore, have several versions of the same icon in the panel definition. When you generate the icon panel, the panel reflects these different versions of the icon (even though there is only one version of the icon definition).

**Note:** Although a generated icon panel can retain different versions of the same icon, the icon panel definition cannot. The next time you access the panel definition, the definition reflects the latest version of the icon.

#### To edit an icon on the icon panel

- 1. Position the cursor in the icon you want to edit.
- 2. Press F8 (EditIcon).

The Icon Editor panel appears.

3. Edit the icon, as required.

**Note:** If you want to create a new copy of the icon, change the value in the Name field.

4. Press F3 (File).

The updated definition is saved and the Icon Panel Generator panel appears.

# Display Information About an Icon on the Icon Panel

You can display the name of and the resource group attached to an icon on the icon panel.

To display the information, press F10 (Query).

A message displays the required information.

The following example identifies the icon as CVNEW with an attached resource group named ACREC:

RM810017 ICON=CVNEW RESOURCE GROUP=ACREC

## Delete an Icon from the Icon Panel

# To delete an icon from the icon panel

- 1. Position the cursor in the icon you want to delete.
- 2. Press F5 (CutIcon).

The selected icon is deleted.

**Note:** The Cutlcon action temporarily stores the icon that is removed from the icon panel; however, the icon is lost if you use the F7 (Picklcon) or F5 (Cutlcon) function key on another icon.

# **Maintenance of Icon Panel Definitions**

You can browse, update, copy, and delete icon panel definitions from the Icon Panel Definition List panel.

**Note:** You cannot update the definition of an icon panel that a graphical monitor is using.

If an icon in the panel definition does not have an attached resource group, you cannot generate the panel. A message is displayed on your screen to advise you of the fact. You can either attach any missing groups so that you can generate the panel or press F3 (File) again without generating the panel.

# How You Edit a Generated Icon Panel

To update an icon panel, you can regenerate the panel by using an updated definition or you can edit the panel description file directly.

Enter the **/GADMIN.E** path to access the list of icon panels. The Panel List panel appears.

The panel displays the list of icon panels in the knowledge base. Some of these panels are generated using icon panel definitions; some of these panels are created by users (for example, by using the Copy or Rename action). If an icon panel definition generates the panel, the Name and Description columns reflect the name and description of the definition.

Consider the following when you edit an icon panel description file:

- If you regenerate an icon panel by using the P Define Icon Panels option, you lose whatever editing you did in the description file. Use the R action to rename the panel before editing.
- The first line in a description file is the panel description, as displayed on the panel list.
- The #NOTE #ICON statement in a description file associates the specified resource groups with the icon panel.

**Note:** For information about panels and panel statements, see the *Network Control Language Programming Guide*.

# Set Up Default Icon Panel for Your Users

You can add an icon panel to a user profile so that it is displayed automatically each time that user accesses the graphical monitor.

# To add an icon panel to a user profile

1. Enter /ASADMIN.UP at the prompt.

The User Profile List appears.

2. Select the user profile.

The Panel Display List appears.

3. Select Graphical Monitor Profile.

The Graphical Monitor Profile panel appears.

4. Complete the following field:

#### **Panel Name**

Specifies the name of the icon panel that you want to appear.

Note: You can enter? to display a selection list of icon panels.

5. Press F3 (File).

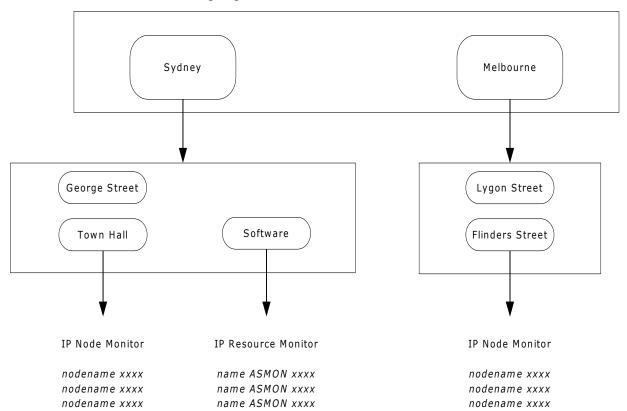
The details are saved.

# **Example: Graphical Monitor Configuration**

The Rich Finance Company provides financial services in Australia. In Sydney it has branches at George Street and Town Hall, and in Melbourne it has branches at Lygon Street and Flinders Street. The company also has a department in Sydney that performs back-office processing in a small data center.

You want to monitor the key IP nodes in the Sydney and Melbourne offices, and the following address spaces on the Sydney LPAR:

- Individual CICS applications
- Subsystem
- Mainframe printing application



# The following diagram illustrates this structure:

To create this structure, you need the following:

- Two icon templates (which can be used for the seven icons)
- Seven resource groups one each for Sydney, Melbourne, and all of the branches
- Seven icons one each for Sydney, Melbourne, and all of the branches
- Three icon panels

# **Chapter 12: Implementing EventView**

This section contains the following topics:

EventView (see page 119)

EventView Functions (see page 120)

Benefits of Using EventView (see page 122)

Message Monitoring (see page 122)

Alert Generation (see page 125)

# **EventView**

EventView performs automation at the event level. It provides event level automation and control, and can handle timed events.

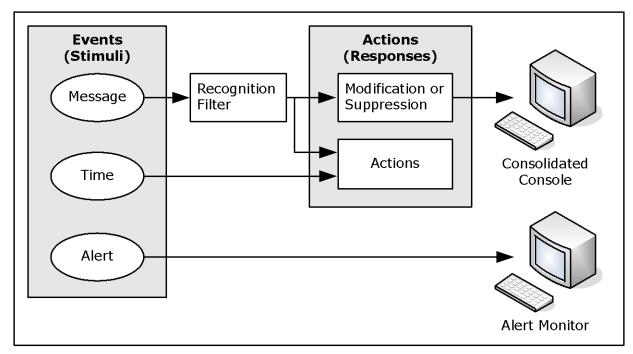
Successful event management relies on the recognition of significant events from the mass of messages generated by a system and the appropriate responses to these events.

# **EventView Functions**

EventView provides the following functions:

- Event-based automation, which relies on the following:
  - The creation of appropriate rules and rule sets
  - The processing of messages
  - The processing of EventView timers
  - Message generation
- Console message consolidation
- Alert generation

The following illustration shows how EventView works.



# **Event-based Automation**

You can define event rules to do the following:

- Suppress messages
- Change message text
- Enhance message presentation (for example, highlighting)
- Set route and descriptor codes
- Perform actions

Rules are grouped logically into rule sets, which define how an event is processed and what actions are taken in response to an event that is *not* related to a resource. (Resource-based events are handled by ResourceView.) An event can be a message or a specified time.

# Sample Message Suppression Rule Sets

EventView provides the following samples of message suppression rule sets:

- AGRSUPP, which is based on the aggressive list of suppressible messages recommended by IBM
- CONSUPP, which is based on the conservative list of suppressible messages recommended by IBM

**Note:** For the IBM recommended lists, see IBM's *MVS Initialization and Tuning Reference* guide.

# **Console Message Consolidation**

You can monitor message flows from multiple systems on a single screen—the consolidated console. Console consolidation controls the way you see messages on the console. In addition, messages displayed on the consolidated console are affected by EventView processing.

For example, message text and message presentation can be modified by EventView, and the consolidated console user sees the modified message. If EventView suppresses a message, that message is not displayed on the consolidated console.

You can define message profiles that customize the view of the message flow. Different users can have different sets of message profiles to suit the functions they perform.

Message profiles enable the meaningful grouping of messages based on criteria such as system, message ID, job name, and system codes.

# **Benefits of Using EventView**

EventView benefits your organization in the following ways:

- Reduces system console message rates; you can filter messages received and suppress unwanted messages
- Produces a standardized response to events or problems
- Enables you to schedule actions to occur at specific times or at regular intervals
- Gathers useful statistics for messages and timers
- Able to learn messages
- Enables you to monitor message flows to multiple consoles on a single screen
- Enables you to generate alerts to remind operators of significant events

# Message Monitoring

Besides responding to resource status, you need to respond to events not handled by resource automation.

The Automation Services components that affect message display are the EventView message rules and the console message consolidation facility. To use the latter facility, you define message profiles.

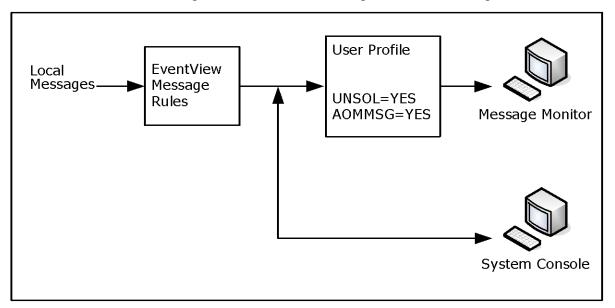
Typically, you use both components and you can monitor messages from multiple systems. However, if you do not want to define message profiles, you can disable the message consolidation facility. In this case, only messages from the local system can be monitored. You control the availability of the facility by using the CCONSOLIDATN parameter group.

**Note:** For more information about parameter groups, see the *Reference Guide*.

# **Console Consolidation Disabled**

Without the console consolidation facility, you are able to monitor local messages only. Remote messages are not routed to this region, and messages from this system are not routed to remote regions.

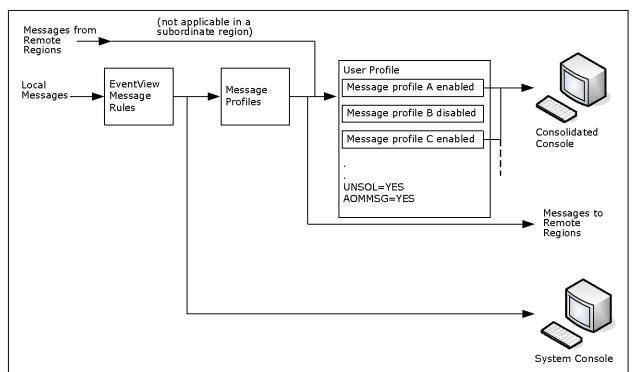
The following illustration shows how messages arrive at the message monitor.



# **Console Consolidation Enabled**

With message consolidation enabled, the message monitor becomes a consolidated console. Using the console consolidation facility, an operator is able to monitor messages from one or more systems on the consolidated console.

You use EventView message rules to preprocess the messages, for example, suppressing or highlighting the messages. You can then use message profiles to select the type of processed information to display on the consolidated console. For example, you can define a message profile that selects messages from a particular system. You can selectively enable profiles to customize the view of monitored events, for example, VTAM messages only.



The following illustration shows how messages arrive at the consolidated console.

# **How You Implement Message Profiles**

Typical stages in implementing message profiles are as follows:

- 1. Analyze the message flow and the operations tasks to determine the different message views that are required.
- 2. Create EventView rules to suppress unwanted messages.
- 3. Create the message profiles, and assign each operator the appropriate message profile IDs in the user definition and user profile.
- 4. Activate the message profiles.

# **Alert Generation**

Alerts are displayed on the alert monitor. Alerts can be generated from EventView rules. Generate alerts through user-defined processes by using the following macros:

- GENALERT enables a process to generate an alert of a specified severity.
- DELALERT enables a process to remove an alert from the alert monitor.

Use alerts to warn operators of significant events (for example, reminding the operator to perform tasks that cannot be automated).

# Chapter 13: Implementing EventView Rule Sets

This section contains the following topics:

**EventView Rule Sets** (see page 128)

Add an EventView Rule Set (see page 128)

Monitor EventView Rule Set Status (see page 129)

Statistics (see page 130)

Change the EventView Rule Set Associated with a Local System Image (see page 130)

Add Associated Rules (see page 131)

**Initial Actions** (see page 134)

Include EventView Rule Sets in Other Rule Sets (see page 136)

Maintenance of EventView Rule Sets (see page 136)

**EventView Variables** (see page 137)

# **EventView Rule Sets**

EventView rule sets consist of various members that define how an event is processed and what actions are taken in response to the event. An EventView rule set can include the following:

- Initial actions
- Message rules
- Message group rules
- Timer rules
- Other rule sets

You can create an EventView rule set for each area of responsibility. For example, you can create a CICS rule set, a VTAM rule set, and so on, to organize your rules in logical and manageable groups.

**Note:** Specify automation that deals with the status of resources in the resource definition, *not* in a message rule.

To activate an EventView rule set, it must be associated with an active system image.

Note: For information about system images, see the Reference Guide.

Only one EventView rule set, known as the primary rule set, is associated with a system image. If you want to activate more than one EventView rule set, include the other rule sets in the rule set associated with the active image. For example, you could create a master EventView rule set into which all other EventView rule sets are included.

# Add an EventView Rule Set

You must add an EventView rule set before you can add the associated members.

# To add an EventView rule set

1. Enter /EADMIN.R.R at the prompt.

The Ruleset List panel appears.

2. Press F4 (Add).

The Ruleset Description panel appears.

3. Complete the panel, adding comments on the Comments panel if required. See the online help for field descriptions.

**Note:** An EventView rule set can be activated only if it has an ACTIVE status.

# **Specify Control Options for Testing**

The control options for the primary EventView rule set override those options specified for the included EventView rule sets.

When setting up an EventView rule set, you can test it without actually triggering any rules.

To set up a rule set for testing, specify the following values:

- NO for the Perform Message Modification? and Perform Action? options
- YES for the Log Ruleset Activity? option

You can then see from the entries in the general activity log (marked as TEST) what activity would take place if the EventView rule set was, in reality, working as intended.

### **Example: Messages Logged in Test Mode**

This example shows some messages logged in test mode.

09.04.49 RE0113 RULESET ACTIVITY LOGGING STARTED
09.04.58 RE0130 (TEST) RULE FOR TESTMSG SET ATTRIBUTES: DELIVER=NO
09.05.12 RE0114 RULESET ACTIVITY LOGGING STOPPED

# Monitor EventView Rule Set Status

To view the status of the active EventView rule set and all its included rule sets on the current system, enter **/EADMIN.S.R** at the prompt.

The EventView: Ruleset Status panel appears. This panel displays the same information as the Ruleset Description panel, plus it lists loaded EventView rule sets. The primary EventView rule set is the first EventView rule set listed, followed by its included EventView rule sets. Each level of further inclusion is indicated by indentation.

**Note:** If an EventView rule set has a status of inactive, its included EventView rule sets are not processed.

# **Statistics**

If you specify YES in the Collect Statistics? field on the Ruleset Description panel, then EventView collects statistics relating to messages received and timer schedule items executed. You can use these statistics to measure the effectiveness of your EventView rules.

If the SMFDATA region parameters are configured, the statistics are output to SMF at a user-defined interval.

**Note:** For information about the SMF record format, see the *Reference Guide*.

# Change the EventView Rule Set Associated with a Local System Image

You can change the EventView rule set associated with a local system image. Update the EventView Ruleset to Activate field on the System Image Definition panel.

**Note:** The associated rule set is activated when the system image is loaded initially. If you change the rule set associated with the system image later, you do not have to reload the system image. The rule set takes effect immediately when the system image definition is saved.

# To change the EventView rule set associated with a local system image

1. Enter /RADMIN.I.L at the prompt.

The Local System Image List appears.

2. Enter **U** (Update) next to the system image that you want to update.

The Local System Image Definition panel appears.

3. Enter the new EventView rule set name in the EventView Ruleset to Activate field.

**Note:** You can select an EventView rule set from the prompted field value list.

4. Press F3 (File).

The updated record is saved.

**Note:** By default, EventView rule actions are not executed if the system image is operating in the MANUAL global operation mode. The actions, however, can be enabled by using the Perform Action in Manual Mode? field of the AUTOIDS region parameter group.

# **Add Associated Rules**

After you have created an EventView rule set, you can add associated message, message group, or timer rules.

#### To add a rule

- 1. From the Ruleset List, apply the appropriate action, such as **M** (Message List), to the EventView rule set with which you want to associate the new rule.
- 2. Press F4 (Add).
- 3. Complete the fields on the initial panel displayed, and on any subsequent panels as required. Press F1 (Help) for help about the fields.

# Message Rules

Message rules contain some or all of the following information:

- Message text and filtering criteria
- Message delivery and suppression details
- Required message modification details
- Which actions a message triggers
- Which message groups the current message rule is related to
- User-defined EventView variables

# How You Add Message Rules

Message <u>rules are added</u> (see page 131) in the same way as other EventView rule set members. You apply the **M** (Message List) action to the EventView rule set with which you want to associate the new message rule.

**Important!** Message Text is a mandatory field. If you enter the wildcard character in this field, *all* messages are tested against this rule, which can degrade performance.

# **Message Execution Conditions**

You can <u>specify execution conditions</u> (see page 157). The rule executes only if all of the given conditions apply.

# **Message Groups**

If a message on its own is not significant, but another message increases its significance, create a message group to associate these messages.

**Note:** The order in which the grouped messages occur is not important, as long as all arrive in the specified time interval.

Message group rules contain the following information:

- The maximum time interval in which all messages in the group must be received, to trigger the rule
- Message text for up to ten messages, on the Message Group Details panel (displayed automatically when a message is <u>associated with a message group</u> (see page 132))
- The text of a message to issue if the group rule is triggered, and where and how to display this message
- The action or actions to perform when a group rule is triggered
- User-defined EventView variables, which you can set to the specified values before or after other rule actions

# How You Add Message Group Rules

Message group rules are added in the same way as other EventView rule set members. You apply the **G** (Group) action to the EventView rule set with which you want to associate the new message group.

# Associate Message Rules with Message Group Rules

To establish a relationship between a message rule and a message group rule, you must add an entry on the Related Message Group panel (the fifth panel in the sequence of Message Rule panel). The message rule is in turn added on the Message Group Details panel of the message group rule definition. The same message rule can be associated with up to five message group rules.

### To associate a message rule with a message group rule

1. Enter **5** from within the message rule definition, for example:

The Related Message Group panel appears.

2. Add the message group rule. Optionally, specify a correlation key for precise recognition purposes.

The following panel shows an example:

3. Press F3 (File).

The message rule is updated and added to the message group rule definition, for example:

The correlation key enables one message group rule to cover numerous different situations, saving you from having to create numerous different rules. The rule is not triggered unless the values of the correlation keys in each of the grouped messages match.

For example, the correlation key as shown in the example, is the name of the variable that contains the job name. The group rule is triggered only if the messages associated with the group:

- All arrived in the specified interval (10 minutes)
- Were all generated by the same job

# **Timers**

If you want a rule triggered on a particular day of the week (or year) and at a particular time, you need to add a timer rule. Timer rules contain the following information:

- Whether the timer rule applies to a specific system
- Up to 99 detailed schedule items
- Which actions are triggered by a timer
- User-defined EventView variables

# **How You Add Timers**

Timer rules are <u>added</u> (see page 131) in the same way as other EventView rule set members. You apply the **T** (Timer) action to the EventView rule set with which you want to associate the new timer.

# **Initial Actions**

Initial actions are actions performed when an EventView rule set is activated (that is, when the associated system image becomes active), and before message processing commences.

# **How You Add Initial Actions**

You add initial actions from the Ruleset List by applying the IA (Initial Actions) action to the nominated EventView rule set.

Set variables that are essential to the functioning of an EventView rule set in the initial action rules.

**Note:** If an EventView rule set has associated included EventView rule sets, the initial actions specified for those EventView rule sets are also performed when the primary EventView rule set becomes active.

If you want to set any EventView variables before or after any of the initial actions are performed (to pass parameter values, for example), press F8 (Forward) to go to the Set Variables panel.

On the Set Variables panel, you supply a name for each EventView variable that you want to set, plus the required variable value. When you use the variable subsequently, you prefix the name with &ZREV, which is the EventView variable identifier.

#### **Example: Log Rule Set Activation Message**

This example logs a message to indicate that an EventView rule set is activated.

# **How Initial Actions Are Executed**

When an EventView rule set is activated, the associated initial actions are executed. When you load a system image that contains an EventView rule set that is already active, the region does not reactivate that EventView rule set and the associated initial actions are not executed (for example, when you switch images that use the same EventView rule set).

If you have several system images that use the same EventView rule set and you want the initial actions associated with the EventView rule set executed every time you load one of those images, you can create a primary EventView rule set for each of the images. Each primary EventView rule set includes the actual EventView rule set you want. Because the primary EventView rule sets are different, it is activated every time you switch between the images, thus executing the initial actions.

# Include EventView Rule Sets in Other Rule Sets

#### To include an EventView rule set in another rule set

1. From the Ruleset List, apply the **IR** (Include) action to the EventView rule set in which you want to include another EventView rule set.

The Include Ruleset List appears. This list is blank if there is no EventView rule sets included in the current EventView rule set.

2. Press F4 (Add).

The Eligible Ruleset List appears.

3. Select the EventView rule set to include in the current EventView rule set.

The selected EventView rule set is added to the Included Ruleset List for the current EventView rule set. This means that the included EventView rule set is active when the parent EventView rule set is active.

**Note:** Only the control options of the EventView rule set associated to the system image are used. The control options of included rule sets are ignored.

# Maintenance of EventView Rule Sets

You can browse, update, copy, and delete EventView rule set definitions from the Ruleset List panel.

The C and the D action codes enable you to copy and to delete an *entire* EventView rule set. To copy or delete the EventView rule set definition only, use the CO or DO action codes. You can use the DO action code to delete an EventView rule set only if it is empty—that is, it contains no rules.

# **EventView Variables**

The ability to set and use EventView variables in rules lets you create dynamic rules that depend on conditions identified by other rules and EventView rule sets. That is, you use EventView variables to control rule execution.

EventView variables can be used for the following:

- To pass information and data between rules
- To obtain more information about the environment in which the rule is executing
- To record system states

EventView variables can be set on the Set Variables panel of a message rule, a timer rule, or a group rule. Here, you can set values for up to six variables. These values can be literal or you can specify a substitution variable as the source of the variable value for a message rule.

EventView variables can be used by:

- Rules, to do the following:
  - Provide a correlation key value to match on the Message Delivery panel and the Related Message Group panel.
  - Provide a value for insertion in replacement text. Replacement text specified on the Message Modification, Set Variables and Test Variables panels can include EventView variable names.
- Processes, where the macros EVVARGET and EVVARSET can be used to get and set the values of EventView variables. Variable names can be specified in the Parameters field on the Rule Action panel, as well as on other panels where processes are invoked (see page 263).
- *NCL procedures*, where the \$RECALL application program interface (API) can be used to get and set the values of EventView variables. For more information about \$RECALL API, see the *Reference Guide*.

You must remember to add the EventView variable indicator prefix, &ZREV, to a variable name when it is specified for evaluation.

# **View EventView Variables**

To view all EventView variables that have been set, enter **/EADMIN.S.V** at the prompt.

The EventView: Active Variables panel appears.

# **Chapter 14: Configuring Timers**

This section contains the following topics:

<u>Timer Rules</u> (see page 139)
<u>Add Timers</u> (see page 140)
<u>Display Active Timer Rules</u> (see page 144)

# **Timer Rules**

A timer rule enables you to schedule an action or actions to perform at a specific time or times of the day, week, month, or year.

A timer rule contains the following information:

- The action or actions to perform
- A schedule that defines when the action or actions are performed
- Whether catchup is required, if the system running the timer is unavailable when the timer is due to be activated

A timer schedule is similar to the availability map used by resources controlled by the region. You can specify up to 99 schedule items per timer rule, each containing the following information:

- The day of the week, date, and time when the action or actions are performed
- Whether the action or actions are performed once only, or at regular intervals during a given time period

# **Add Timers**

If you want to add a timer rule that is very similar to an existing one, you can save yourself having to retype details by copying the existing timer and updating the copy as appropriate.

### To add a timer rule

1. Enter /EADMIN.R.

The Define Event Rules panel appears.

2. Type **T** at the prompt and complete the following field:

#### Ruleset

Specifies the name of the rule set with which you want to associate the timer rule.

Press Enter.

The Timer Rule List for the specified rule set appears.

3. Press F4 (Add).

The Timer Description panel appears.

4. Complete the fields on this and subsequent timer rule panels, as required.

Note: For more information, press F1 (Help).

**Note:** If you enter YES in the Delete on Expiry? field, schedule items that have a full date specified are deleted when they pass their expiry date and time.

**Note:** You can also add or update timers from the Active Timer Display List (/EADMIN.S.T).

# **How Catchup Works**

When you define a timer, you specify whether catchup is required if a region running the timer is unavailable when the timer is due to be activated.

Note that if you enter YES in the Catchup Required? field on the Timer Schedule panel, catchup applies to all schedule items entered for this timer.

- If you specify YES, then the scheduled action or actions are performed when the region becomes available, provided that the time specified in the Window field has not elapsed, with the exception of the situation noted below.
- If you specify NO, no belated processing occurs for that timer.

**Note:** In the case of timers that define actions that are repeated, catchup can be requested. If the specified end time has passed by the time the region running the timer becomes available, the specified action or actions are still performed once. If the region running the timer becomes available part way through the specified time period, the specified action or actions continue at the specified intervals until the specified end time.

# **Catchup Window**

If you specify that catchup is required, you can identify the window in which catchup is performed. You can specify a value between one minute and 24 hours. If the region running the timer becomes available before the catchup window ends, catchup is performed.

# **Timer Schedule Items**

You can enter up to 99 schedule items for a timer. Enter schedule details according to the following definitions:

#### Day

Specifies the days of the week when the timer is activated. As well as the abbreviated versions, you can enter shorthand values asterisk (\*), W/D, or W/E in this field. If an asterisk is entered, an individual schedule item is created for each of the seven days of the week, with all other values duplicated. If you enter W/D, an individual schedule item is created for each of the five working days of the week. Entering W/E results in the creation of individual schedule items for Saturday and Sunday.

**Note:** The validation procedure does not accept a value in both the Day and the Date fields; enter a value in one of these fields only.

#### Date

Specifies the date when the timer is activated. If you specify a numeric value between 1 and 31 in this field, the timer is activated on that day of the month each month. For example, if you specify 1, it is activated on the first day of each month. If, in addition to specifying a day, you also specify the first three characters of a month in the format *dd-mmm*, the timer is activated on that day of that month each year. If, in addition to specifying a day and a month, you also specify a four-character year value in the format *dd-mmm-yyyy*, the timer is activated on that day of that month and that year. If you entered YES in the Delete on Expiry? field, schedule items that have a full date specified are purged after execution.

#### Time

Specifies the time when the action or actions associated with the timer are performed or, if the Every field also contains a value, the time when the action or actions associated with the timer are first performed.

#### **Every**

Specifies the period if you want the action or actions associated with the timer performed at regular intervals. If you enter a value in this field, you must also enter a value in either the Num or the End Time field. When you complete one of these fields, the other is calculated automatically when validation occurs.

The first time the action or actions associated with the timer are performed is specified in the Time field—see the preceding field description. To calculate the time when the second occurrence of the action or actions associated with the timer are performed, the value in the Every field is added to the value in the Time field, and so on.

# Num

Specifies the number of times that the action or actions associated with the timer are performed. When you enter a value in this field, the value in the End Time field is automatically calculated.

#### **End Time**

Specifies the last permissible time when the regular action or actions associated with the timer are performed. When you enter a value in this field, the value in the Num field is automatically calculated.

#### **Status**

Specifies the status of a timer schedule item: ACTIVE or INACTIVE. You can disable an individual timer schedule item by changing the status of that item from ACTIVE to INACTIVE.

### **Add Further Schedule Items**

When you have completed the first seven entry lines on the static list displayed initially, you can add further schedule items.

### To add further schedule items

1. Press F10 (Scrllst).

**Note:** If you are using a 24-line screen, you can type MAX at the prompt to maximize screen use and to display the schedule list only.

- 2. To add a line to the schedule, apply the **R** (Repeat) action to a listed item.
- 3. Overtype the repeated line with the new schedule item details.

# View the Next Execution of Timer Schedule Items

To view the next execution of the time schedule items, press the F5 (NextTmr) function key on the Timer Schedule panel.

The Next Execution Display panel appears.

This panel displays the next scheduled execution time and date of each timer schedule item in the order that they fall due, as well as all the schedule item details specified in the schedule map.

PROD E Command ===>	ventView : Next	Execution	Display	Sc	roll	> PAGE
Item NextDate 2 08-AUG-1995 3 09-AUG-1995 4 10-AUG-1995 5 11-AUG-1995 6 12-AUG-1995 7 13-AUG-1995 1 14-AUG-1995 **END**	NextTime Day 16.00.00 TUE 16.00.00 WED 16.00.00 THU 16.00.00 FRI 16.00.00 SAT 16.00.00 MON	Date	Time 16.00.00 16.00.00 16.00.00 16.00.00 16.00.00	Every 00.10 00.10 00.10 00.10 00.30 00.30 00.10	Num 12 12 12 12 4 4 12	EndTime 18.00.00 18.00.00 18.00.00 18.00.00 18.00.00 18.00.00
F1=Help F2=Spli F7=Backward F8=Forw		F5=Find F6=Refresh		efresh		

# **Delete Timer Schedule Items**

To delete a timer schedule item, apply the **D** (Delete) action to the item.

# **Timer Actions**

On the Timer Actions panel, you can specify what response is made when a scheduled timer item is triggered. You can specify the following:

- System command text, such as: START STC1
- Command text, such as:

LOG TEST TIMER RULE EXECUTED

- A process selected from the list of valid processes—enter a question mark in the field to display a list of valid processes
- An Automation Services command selected from the list of valid commands—enter a question mark in the field to display a list of valid commands

#### **Example: Send Warning Message**

The TSO resource is defined to stop automatically at 1900 on weekdays. To warn users of the impending shutdown, you can define a timer that sends a warning message to the users at 1845 on the weekdays.

# **Display Active Timer Rules**

### To display active timer rules

1. Enter /EADMIN.

The Event Administration Menu appears.

2. Enter **S.T**.

The Active Timer Display appears.

The displayed list shows the date and time of the next scheduled execution of all timer rules that have a status of active and are associated with the active rule set. If you scroll to the right, the schedule item details, as specified on the schedule map, appear.

You can browse, update, copy, or delete listed timers.

# **Chapter 15: Processing Messages**

This section contains the following topics:

Message Rules (see page 145)

How You Specify Message Filtering Criteria (see page 145)

Use Wildcards in Message Text (see page 147)

Extended Filtering Criteria (see page 148)

**Execution Conditions (see page 157)** 

How You Suppress Messages (see page 158)

Message Delivery (see page 158)

Message Modification (see page 160)

Actions to Take in Response to Messages (see page 163)

# Message Rules

You use EventView message rules to process messages.

# How You Specify Message Filtering Criteria

The text of a received message is compared with the scan text specified on the Message Filter panel. For example, if you specify TESTMSG1 as the scan text, any message starting with those eight characters is considered a match, including TESTMSG12 and TESTMSG1 TESTING.

**Note:** If you want to capture a message that has leading blanks, do not specify the leading blanks on the message filter panel. However, on the Extended Message Filter panel, absolute position is important so leading blanks must be counted when using start position of text.

This message text can include wildcard characters. The default is the asterisk (\*). You can specify the message text that triggers the rule if the execution conditions are met. You can also specify additional filters on further panels to check for various different conditions. To access those panels, enter **E** next to the message text (as shown in the following illustration).

PROD EventView : Messag Command ===>	ge FilterTAPEMON Function=UPDATE
Ruleset Name TAPEMON Short Description Mount request proce	Rule Status+ ACTIVE essing
. Expected Message	S=ListPanels E=ExtFilter T=TestVars
Message Text ( WildChar = * )   e IEC501A	ExtFlt   NO

PROD EventView : Extended Message Filter Command ===> Function=UPDATE
Message Text IEC501A Wildcard Character Descriptor Code+ _ Route Code+ _ Message ID (of major line) System Name
. Message Text Analysis
Expression e.g. (1 and (2 or 3))
F1=Help F2=Split F3=OK F8=Forward F9=Swap F11=Panels F12=Cancel

# **Use Wildcards in Message Text**

Typically, you can simply specify enough message text to identify the messages you want the message rule to process.

You can also use wildcard characters to insert character patterns in the message text. If you use a wildcard character, you must also add a wildcard character to the end of the message text if necessary.

The following examples show the correct use of wildcard characters:

\*EC501A\* IEC50\*A\* IEC5\*\*A\*

The number of characters represented by a wildcard character is dependent on its position in the message text as follows:

- If the wildcard character is at the beginning of, or embedded in the message text, it represents one character.
- If the wildcard character is at the end of the message text, it represents any number of characters.

# **Extended Filtering Criteria**

The Extended Message Filter panel lets you specify precise criteria to match:

#### **Wildcard Character**

Specifies a value other than the default value of an asterisk (\*). This change is reflected in the Wildcard Character field on the Message Filter panel when you save the extended filtering criteria. This feature is useful if the message actually contains an asterisk.

#### **Descriptor Code**

Specifies one or more descriptor codes. A descriptor code determines the color that the operating system uses to display the message on a color console. The code also determines whether the message is a non-roll delete message. The descriptor codes assigned to a message are tested against the specified descriptor codes. A message matches if it contains any of the specified descriptor codes.

#### **Route Code**

Specifies one or more route codes. The operating system uses the route code to control message delivery. The route codes assigned to a message are tested against the specified route codes. A message matches if it contains any of the specified route codes.

#### Message ID

Specifies the first word of the message text (disregarding any flag characters, such as an asterisk, in position 1 or 2). When a secondary line of a multiline WTO message is filtered, the message ID for the line is the same as the ID for the primary line.

#### **System Name**

Specifies the name of the system from which the message originated. This field is useful if the local system reissues messages received from other systems. Messages are reissued if the system is part of a sysplex environment.

## **Message Text Analysis**

You can analyze the text of the current message by word, phrase, or string, by specifying any combination of start position, word number, and permitted operator (such as equals, is greater than, and so on). You can specify up to five tests to perform on the message text and link these tests in an expression.

**Note:** EventView comparisons are *text-based*, that is, they are performed character by character, starting from the leftmost character of the extracted text. Text checking is done using the EBCDIC codes. Numbers are regarded as text. For example, the character string 100 is less than 99.

#### Message Text Analysis Criteria

You specify the message text analysis criteria on the following panels:

- Define Extended Filter Definitions panel (for a resource definition)
- Extended Message Filter panel (for a message action rule).

The panels enable you to analyze the text of the received message by specifying values in the Strt Pos, Word Num, and Opr fields. You can specify up to five tests, which are then linked in a defined, logical relationship that you specify in the Expression field.

For example, the Expression field has the entry 1 AND (2 OR 3). For the rule to be valid, Test 1 must be true and either Test 2 or Test 3 must be true.

A message consists of words. A word is a string of characters delimited by either a space or a comma. You have the option of specifying a word or part of a word for testing, or of extracting a substring for testing.

**Important!** ResourceView handles numeric comparisons; EventView always performs character comparisons.

#### Strt Pos

Specifies a position in the message where the text comparison is to start. The presence or absence of a value in the Word Num field determines the actual starting position.

If the start position is 2 and the Word Num field is blank, the comparison is on the partial message starting at the second character.

If the Strt Pos field is blank but the Word Num field has a value, then only that word is compared to the scan text. If the Strt Pos *and* the Word Num field are blank, the entire message is compared to the scan text.

If both Strt Pos and Word Num fields have values, the comparison narrows to a start position in a single word of the message text. The text used for comparison is the partial word. For example, if the word number is 8 and the start position is 2, the comparison starts from the second character of the eighth word.

For example, the following message arrives:

AAA100A THIS IS A MESSAGE NUMBERED MESSAGE 100

■ If the Strt Pos field has a value of 2, the string tested is as follows:

AA100A THIS IS A MESSAGE NUMBERED MESSAGE 100

■ If the Word Num field has a value of 5, the string tested is as follows:

MESSAGE

If the Strt Pos field has a value of 2 and the Word Num field has a value of 5, the string tested is as follows:

**ESSAGE** 

Default: 1

Values: 1 through 999

#### **Lne Num**

Specifies a particular line in a multiline WTO or WTOR. If blank, any value in the Word Num field is treated as if all lines in the multiline message are joined as one string.

Values: Blank and 1 through 999

**Note:** Lne Num is not supported in EventView message rules; it is supported in ResourceView only.

#### **Word Num**

Specifies a particular word in a specific position in the message text string. If this field is blank, the entire message text that occurs after the specified start position is compared to the scan text. If this field contains a value but the Strt Pos field is blank, only the specified word is compared to the scan text. Spaces or commas delimits words.

Values: Blank and 1 through 999

#### Opr

Specifies a valid operator to control the type of comparison to perform if you enter a value in the Strt Pos or the Word Num field. The following operators are valid:

- CT (ConTain)
- EQ (EQual to)
- GE (Greater than or Equal to)
- GT (Greater Than)
- LE (Less than or Equal to)
- LT (Less Than)
- NE (Not Equal to).

If you enter a question mark (?) in this field, the list of valid operators is displayed.

#### **Scan Text**

Specifies the actual text (scan text) you want to test against the message text. You must have a match in the specified position or word for the comparison to be true. If you specify either CT or EQ as the operator, you can use the wildcard in or at the end of the Scan Text field. (You cannot use the wildcard character with the other operators.)

#### **CT Operator**

The CT operator tests whether the extracted message text (after the Strt Pos and Word Num fields have been applied) contains the specified scan text. If the Strt Pos and Word Num fields are blank, then the comparison is true if the scan text appears anywhere in the message.

#### **Example: Use CT to Test a Message**

This example uses the CT operator to test the following message:

AAA100A THIS IS A MESSAGE NUMBERED MESSAGE 100

The following table shows the result of the tests:

Strt Pos	Word Num	Scan Text	Extracted Text	Result
3	5	AGE	SSAGE	TRUE
1	2	THIS	THIS	TRUE

#### **EQ** Operator

The EQ operator tests for an exact match. That is, the (extracted) message text string must match the scan text exactly for the test to succeed.

A wildcard can be either in the scan text or at the end of the scan text.

If, for example, the message text is FREDERICK and the scan text is FRED, the test fails. If, however, the scan text is FRED\*, the test succeeds.

#### **Example: Use EQ to Test a Message**

This example uses the EQ operator to test the following message:

AAA100A THIS IS A MESSAGE NUMBERED MESSAGE 100

Strt Pos	Word Num	Scan Text	Extracted Text	Result
4	5	SAG	SAGE	FALSE
4	5	SAGE	SAGE	TRUE
1	8	10	100	FALSE
1	8	100	100	TRUE

## **GE** Operator

The GE operator tests whether the value of the (extracted) message text is greater than or equal to that of the scan text. For ResourceView, if the characters to test are numeric, a numeric comparison is executed.

## **Example: Use GE to Test a Message**

This example uses the GE operator to test the following message:

AAA100A THIS IS A MESSAGE NUMBERED MESSAGE 100

Strt Pos	Word Num	Scan Text	Extracted Text	Result
1	8	99	100	TRUE (ResourceView)
1	8	99	100	FALSE (EventView)
1	8	100	100	TRUE
4	Blank	99	100A THIS	FALSE
4	5	LAGE	SAGE	TRUE
4	5	TAGE	SAGE	FALSE

## **GT** Operator

The GT operator tests whether the value of the (extracted) message text string is greater than the value of the scan text. For ResourceView, if the characters to test are numeric, a numeric comparison is executed.

## **Example: Use GT to Test a Message**

This example uses the GT operator to test the following message:

AAA100A THIS IS A MESSAGE NUMBERED MESSAGE 100

Strt Pos	Word Num	Scan Text	Extracted Text	Result
1	8	99	100	TRUE (ResourceView)
1	8	99	100	FALSE (EventView)
1	8	100	100	FALSE
4	Blank	99	100A THIS	FALSE
4	5	LAGE	SAGE	TRUE
4	5	TAGE	SAGE	FALSE

## **LE Operator**

The LE to operator tests whether the value of the (extracted) message text string is less than or equal to that of the scan text. For ResourceView, if the characters to test are numeric, a numeric comparison is executed.

## **Example: Use LE to Test a Message**

This example uses the LE operator to test the following message:

AAA100A THIS IS A MESSAGE NUMBERED MESSAGE 100

Strt Pos	Word Num	Scan Text	Extracted Text	Result
1	8	99	100	FALSE (ResourceView)
1	8	99	100	TRUE (EventView)
1	8	100	100	TRUE
4	Blank	99	100A THIS	TRUE
4	5	LAGE	SAGE	FALSE
4	5	TAGE	SAGE	TRUE

## **LT Operator**

The LT operator tests whether the value of the (extracted) message text string is less than the value of the scan text. For ResourceView, if the characters to test are numeric, a numeric comparison is executed.

## **Example: Use LT to Test a Message**

This example uses the LT operator to test the following message:

AAA100A THIS IS A MESSAGE NUMBERED MESSAGE 100

Strt Pos	Word Num	Scan Text	Extracted Text	Result
1	8	99	100	FALSE (ResourceView)
1	8	99	100	TRUE (EventView)
1	8	100	100	FALSE
4	Blank	99	100A THIS	TRUE
4	5	LAGE	SAGE	FALSE
4	5	TAGE	SAGE	TRUE

#### **NE Operator**

The NE to operator tests for a mismatch between the (extracted) message text string and the scan text.

#### **Example: Use NE to Test a Message**

This example uses the NE operator to test the following message:

AAA100A THIS IS A MESSAGE NUMBERED MESSAGE 100

The following table shows the result of the tests:

Strt Pos	Word Num	Scan Text	Extracted Text	Result
1	8	99	100	TRUE
1	8	100	100	FALSE
4	Blank	99	100A THIS	TRUE
4	5	LAGE	SAGE	TRUE
4	5	TAGE	SAGE	TRUE

#### **Expression To Link Tests**

The tests you specify in the Text Analysis box are linked in a defined relationship in the Expression field. The Boolean operators AND, OR, and NOT link the tests.

For example, you specify 1 and (2 or 3) in the Expression field. This expression indicates that the following conditions must be satisfied before the rule can be triggered:

- Test 1 must always be true.
- Either Test 2 or Test 3 must be true.

Note: If you leave the Expression field blank, all specified conditions must be true.

#### **EventView Variables**

You can use the values of EventView variables as a condition to trigger a rule. You specify the values on the Test EventView Variables panel (the second panel in the extended filter sequence). These values are compared with the values of the predefined EventView variables when the rule is validated. To trigger the rule, they must match.

## **Execution Conditions**

If the message text passes the filtering process, further validation is performed to see whether the message received meets the specified execution conditions.

All the execution conditions specified on the Message Filter panel must be met before the message rule can be triggered. The following shows an example.

**Important!** If you want to detect a message from a started task that runs under the master scheduler (that is, by using the SUB=MSTR operand), do not use the Job Name and Job Type fields.

## **Overlapping Rules**

You need to take into consideration that there may be more than one rule that applies to the same message.

EventView selects and executes the rule considered to be the best fit. This decision is based on how specific the filtering and execution conditions are; the more specific the rule (for example, the more message text specified), the better the fit.

You can override this determination of the best fit by entering a value (in the range 1 to 99) in the Rule Priority field, to indicate the order of importance. Top priority rules are given a ranking of 1, while the least important rule can be ranked 99.

You may want to trigger multiple rules for one message. The Execute if Not Best Fit? field, which can be set to Yes or to No, functions as follows:

- If set to NO (the default), the rule is not executed unless it is the best fit.
- If set to YES, the rule actions are executed whenever validation is successful.

# **How You Suppress Messages**

You can reduce message traffic to the system and the consolidated console by suppressing messages that operators do not require to perform their tasks. Message suppression does not affect the automated resource monitoring and control functions performed by ResourceView and ServiceView.

Use the following methods to suppress messages:

- Set the Deliver flag from the Message Delivery panel of a message rule. For example, you can specify LOG to suppress messages that trigger the rule from the consoles but enables them to be logged.
- Use the threshold criteria on the Message Delivery panel to suppress redundant messages when multiple messages trigger the rule in a specified time.
- When you have implemented rules for all relevant messages, you can suppress all other messages. To suppress these messages, specify NO or Z in the Default Message Delivery field on the Ruleset Description panel.

Use the message-learning facility to identify any new messages that have been suppressed. You can then decide whether to create rules for them.

# Message Delivery

When a message satisfies the filtering criteria of a rule that is the best fit, the rule controls how the message is delivered. Specify the delivery criteria on the Message Delivery panel.

# Set the Deliver Flag

To set the Deliver flag on the Message Delivery panel, specify *one* of the following values:

- YES (the default), if you want to deliver the message to the operating system and the consolidated console, and to log to the system log (SYSLOG) and the activity log
- IGN, if you want the region to ignore the message, but deliver it to the operating system and log it to the system log (SYSLOG)
- LOG, if you want the message logged to SYSLOG and the activity log, but not displayed on the console
- NO, if you want the message suppressed everywhere with the exception of SYSLOG
- Z, if you want the message suppressed everywhere, including SYSLOG

**Note:** Delivery of system messages to the activity log can be suppressed by the LOGFILES parameter group.

## **Delivery Thresholds**

Thresholds determine what actions are taken when multiple messages trigger the rule in a given time period.

You set thresholds on the Message Delivery panel. You can request that the action associated with the rule be performed before these thresholds are reached, after they are reached, or whenever the rule is triggered, by entering a valid value in the Do Action field

**Note:** When a threshold is reached, the value of the Deliver flag is effectively reversed. For example, if the flag is set to NO, messages to which the rule applies are suppressed until the threshold is reached, then delivered to the console. If the flag is set to YES, messages are delivered to the console until the threshold is reached, then suppressed. If the flag is set to LOG, messages are sent to the log until the threshold is reached, then delivered to the console.

#### How You Use Thresholds When Deliver Flag Is YES

You can specify that you do not want to see the same message more than a given number of times within a certain time interval.

For example, if you do not want to see the same message more than ten times within one minute, you enter the following values:

- 10 in the Maximum Number field
- **00.01.00** in the Time Interval field.

#### How You Use Thresholds When Delivery Flag Is NO

You can specify that you only want a message displayed if it starts occurring more frequently than usual. You enter a value in the Time Interval field. If more messages of the same kind than the number specified in the Maximum Number field are received in the specified time interval, the messages are displayed. Otherwise, the messages are not displayed.

For example, you want to see every fifth occurrence of a message. You set the Maximum Number field to four and leave the Time Interval field blank (or set to 0). This setting specifies that, no matter how long the interval between occurrences of this message, every fifth occurrence of the message is displayed. All other occurrences of the message are suppressed.

#### **Correlation Key**

To avoid creating separate rules for different versions of the same message, you can specify a correlation key on the Message Delivery panel. The rule keeps separate threshold counts for each instance of the correlation key. The separate counts avoid the possible suppression of important but uncommon versions of a message.

The correlation key can include the following:

- A user-defined EventView variable
- A reference to a ZMSG system variable, such as &ZMSGWORD3

**Note:** For more information about the system variables, see the *Network Control Language Reference Guide*.

#### **Example: Specify a Correlation Key**

This example limits the number of messages (from a given job) that trigger the rule to ten for every hour:

# **Message Modification**

Message presentation and message text can be modified by specifying the requirements on the Message Modification panel.

## **Message Text Replacement**

Using the Replacement Text field on the Message Modification panel, you can replace the entire message text with an alternative text string. The text can include system variables.

**Note:** For more information about the system variables, see the *Network Control Language Reference Guide*.

# **System Message Presentation Parameters**

To alter how a message is displayed to a system console user, specify the message descriptor code in the Set Descriptor Code field. This code determines the color that the system uses to display the message on a color console, and whether the message is non-roll deletable.

To change the message route code, specify a value in the Set Route Code field, which the system uses to control message delivery.

## **OCS Message Presentation Parameters**

By completing the appropriate fields in the lower box on the Message Modification panel, you can alter how a message is displayed to a user. You can also specify whether a console alarm is sounded when the message is delivered, and whether the message is delivered to monitor class users. The monitor status of a user is set in the user definition and profile.

#### **Example: Sound Alarm on Message Delivery**

This example specifies that the console alarm is sounded when the messages that trigger the rule are delivered.

PRODE	EventView : Message Modi	ficationTAPEMON Function=UPDATE
Replacement Text		
Set Descriptor Code   Set Route Code	.+ .+	
Color+   Monitor?   Message Code		Intensity+ NRD?
F1=Help F2=Split F7=Backward F8=Forward		F11=Panels F12=Cancel

# Actions to Take in Response to Messages

**Important!** Do *not* capture a WTO message and then, using a process or other means, reissue the same WTO message. Reissuing a captured WTO message causes a loop.

On the Message Actions panel, you can specify what response is made to a message. Apart from reply text, you can specify the following:

- System command text, such as: START STC1.
- OCS Command text, such as:

LOG TEST MSG1 ENCOUNTERED-WORD5=&ZMSGWORD5

- A process selected from the list of valid processes—enter a question mark in the field to display a list of valid processes.
- An Automation Services command selected from the list of valid commands—enter a question mark in the field to display a list of valid commands.

#### **Example: Load System Image on Rule Trigger**

This example loads a new system image in the local region when the rule is triggered.

PROD EventView : Message Actions Function	BACKUP on=UPDATE
Reply Text	
System Command	
OCS Command	
. Automation Actions	L=List
Command Parameters LOAD NEWSYS=SOLV NEWVERS=2 MODE=AUTOMATED	
F1=Help F2=Split F3=File F4=Save F7=Backward F8=Forward F9=Swap F11=Panels F12=Ca	

# Chapter 16: Message Learning

This section contains the following topics:

About Message Learning (see page 165)
Control Message Learning (see page 166)
Browse and Update Learnt Messages (see page 166)
Generate a Rule for a Learnt Message (see page 167)
Reset New Message Indicators (see page 167)
Delete All Learnt Messages (see page 168)

# **About Message Learning**

The message-learning facility records messages seen by EventView. The facility provides you with a list of all messages encountered during system operation. After you review the initial set of messages, you can reset the new message indicator. Then, when new software is installed, you can easily learn about the new messages.

The facility allows you to do the following:

- List all learnt messages, or all *new* learnt messages
- Display formatted information about listed messages
- Create a message rule from a learnt message
- Use the learnt message list as a prompt list when specifying messages for resource definitions. For more information, see the *Reference Guide*.

Normally, only the first message that starts with a particular word is learnt. However, since some programs issue diverse messages with the same first word, EventView allows for this possibility. EventView also allows you to learn the minor lines of a multiline message. You can enable these features by entering YES in the Learn Multiple Messages? field on the Message Details panel of a learnt message.

# **Control Message Learning**

Message learning can be enabled only if an EventView rule set is loaded with your system image. You control the facility by using the Learn New Messages? field on the Ruleset Description panel of the rule set definition.

#### To enable message learning for a rule set

- 1. Enter /EADMIN.R.R at the prompt.
  - The Ruleset List panel appears.
- Enter U next to the rule set for which you want to enable message learning.
   The panels for rule set definition are listed.
- 3. Enter **S** next to Ruleset Description.
  - The Ruleset Description panel appears.
- 4. Specify YES in the Learn New Messages? field, and press F3 (File).
  - Message learning is enabled for the rule set.

# **Browse and Update Learnt Messages**

You can browse and update learnt messages by applying the appropriate action to a listed message.

#### To display learnt messages

- 1. Enter **/EADMIN** at the prompt.
  - The Event Administration panel appears.
- 2. Select L Message Learning.
- 3. Select either L Learnt Messages (to list all learnt messages) or N New Learnt Messages.
- 4. Apply the **B** (Browse) action to a message you want to browse, or the **U** (Update) action to a message you want to update.
  - For example, you may want to update the Learn Multiple Messages? field on the Message Details panel, to indicate that you want EventView to learn multiple messages with the same ID.
- 5. Select the panel you want to browse or update. Press F1 (Help) for definitions of the fields on the panels.

# Generate a Rule for a Learnt Message

If you want to suppress further instances of a message, or to automate the response to the message, you can generate an associated message rule.

#### To generate a rule for a learnt message

- From the Learnt Message List, apply the GR (Generate Rule) action to a listed item.
   The Ruleset List panel appears.
- 2. Select the rule set to which you want to add the message rule.
  - The initial panel of the generated message rule appears in Add mode. All details stored in the learnt message record that are relevant to message rules have been copied to the message rule record and are displayed in the appropriate fields.
- 3. Complete the mandatory Short Description field, and complete or update other fields as required.
- 4. Save the new message rule.

# **Reset New Message Indicators**

If you want to differentiate between messages learnt before and after a certain date, you can reset the new message indicators. You may also want to reset the new message indicators after you review and create rules for the current learnt messages.

Later, you can select the New Learnt Messages option from the Event Message Learning menu to list only those messages that are learnt since you reset the new message indicators (for example, since the last review).

If you list all learnt messages, an asterisk (\*) identifies the messages that are flagged as new messages.

#### To reset new message indicators

- 1. Enter the **/EADMIN.L** panel path.
  - The Event Message Learning menu appears.
- 2. Select the R option.
  - The Confirm Database RESET panel appears.
- 3. Press Enter.
  - The new message indicators are reset.

# **Delete All Learnt Messages**

To avoid accumulating too many messages, you can purge all messages after you have viewed those messages that interest you and generated appropriate rules.

**Important!** Purged messages cannot be recovered.

The AUTOTABLES parameter group controls the size of the table that stores the learnt messages.

To delete all learnt messages, select the  ${\bf D}$  option from the Event Message Learning menu.

All learnt messages are purged from the Message Learning database.

# Chapter 17: Implementing Message Profiles

This section contains the following topics:

Consolidated Console (see page 169)

How Console Consolidation Works in a Multisystem Environment (see page 170)

Message Profiles (see page 171)

Access the Message Profile Definitions (see page 175)

How You Define a Message Profile (see page 176)

Change the Activation Status of a Message Profile (see page 187)

Activate Message Profiles (see page 188)

Maintenance of Message Profile Definitions (see page 188)

Monitor Messages Using Consolidated Console (see page 189)

Message Monitor (see page 189)

Consolidated Console Setup Requirements (see page 189)

Access the Consolidated Console (see page 191)

Use Message Profiles to Select the Messages to Monitor (see page 193)

Reply to a WTOR Message From the Consolidated Console (see page 194)

Exit the Consolidated Console (see page 194)

# **Consolidated Console**

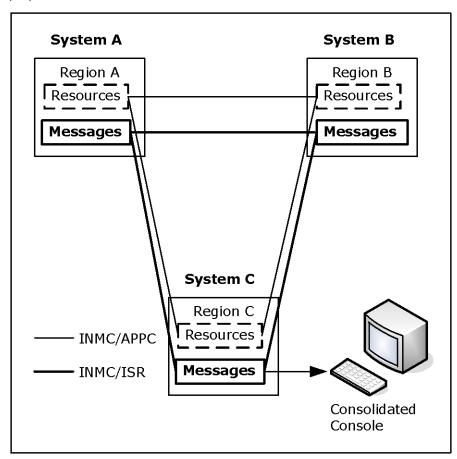
The console consolidation facility consolidates console message traffic from multiple systems onto a single panel (known as a *consolidated console*). Operators can thus view those messages from a single console. You create *message profiles* that contain criteria to identify and classify messages. If a user requests messages for a given message profile, all messages that match the criteria of that profile are displayed on that user's consolidated console.

**Note:** Multisystem message visibility is available only at consolidated consoles in focal point regions. In subordinate regions, only local messages are visible.

# How Console Consolidation Works in a Multisystem Environment

Multisystem support at the message level provides for the distribution of messages to consolidated consoles in focal point regions in the multisystem environment.

The following illustration shows how each region communicates with other connected regions by using Inter-Network Management Connection (INMC)/Inter-System Routing (ISR) links.



Each region has an ISR link manager. The ISR link manager is started up as part of region initialization. The ISR link is active but disabled until a user starts console consolidation. The ISR link manager enables message flow across the link based on requests from users for messages that match specific message profiles.

The user profile determines the messages seen on a consolidated console. The ISR link manager suppresses those messages that are not required, thus reducing the amount of message flow. A user who has not been assigned message profiles or has all the assigned message profiles disabled sees no messages on the consolidated console.

# **Message Profiles**

You can define profiles that capture different types of messages. When you create or change a message profile, the data is automatically distributed to the knowledge bases in connected regions.

**Note:** You can define message profiles in focal point regions only; however, the defined profiles are available to subordinate regions through knowledge base synchronization.

A message profile contains the following criteria types that determine which messages a consolidated console receives:

- The system from which the message comes
- The ID (or the first word) of the message
- The job for which the message is generated
- The message routing and descriptor codes
- The message types and levels, and the types and classes of job for which the message is generated

A message profile must use at least one criterion from the last four criteria types.

Each profile has a status that determines whether it can be activated for use. Profiles must be activated, either by you or automatically during region startup, before they can be used. After you define the profiles, you activate them for use by the operators.

# **Rules for Defining and Using Message Profiles**

This section contains rules about entering data on panels and about how to get the best results when defining message profiles.

#### Create New Message Profiles in a Single System First

Create a new message profile to select messages from one system only, using selection criteria that are unique to that system. For example, if each system uses different message classes, specify a message class that is unique to your system. When this profile is working successfully in one system, you can copy it into a new profile for other systems whose messages you want to monitor.

## **Unique Message Profile Names and IDs**

Unique profile names and IDs identify message profiles. When messages are captured, they are associated with a specific profile ID. The profiles replace the message routing codes corresponding to the IDs as the means for the region to direct relevant messages to operators. An operator who wants to receive specific messages on a consolidated console enables the relevant profiles. Alternatively, if the operator always wants to see consolidated messages for certain profiles, the operator can <u>specify this information in the user profile</u> (see page 171).

**Important!** A profile acts on messages after they are processed by EventView message rules. For example, if a rule changes the routing code and you want to capture the message, use a profile ID that corresponds to the changed routing code.

You cannot include special characters (for example, \_, -, (, ), and ~) or spaces in a profile name.

#### Wildcards

Use wildcard characters to represent character patterns at particular positions in a character string. The supported wildcard characters are as follows:

- \*, representing any character as follows:
  - If the \* is at the beginning of or embedded in a character string, it represents one character.
  - If the \* is at the end of a character string, it represents any number of characters.

You *cannot* use an \* by itself. In the following example, messages are selected for any system that starts with the letters EAST:

Systems to Include EAST\*

#, representing one numeric character. In the following example, messages are selected for systems EASTO through EAST9:

Systems to Include EAST#

• @, representing one alpha character. In the following example, messages are selected for systems EASTOA through EAST9Z:

Systems to Include EAST#@

Type as many characters as necessary to select the required information.

If you want to use a wildcard character in the literal sense, precede the character by a backslash (\), for example:

- ABC### matches any value that starts with ABC followed by three numeric characters.
- ABC##\# enables you to match a value that starts with ABC followed by two numeric characters and ending in a # character.

## Ranges

Use a colon (:) to specify ranges.

The character strings on each side of the colon must be of equal length.

**Note:** The backslash (\) is regarded as one character when the length of the string is calculated.

The asterisk (\*) wildcard character can only be used at the end of a string.

**Example: Select Messages in a Range of Systems** 

This example selects messages for systems EAST0, EAST1, and EAST2.

Systems to be Included EAST0:EAST2

#### **Inclusion and Exclusion Criteria**

In each profile, you specify the criteria that determine the messages to display on the consolidated console. Most panels have *inclusion fields* and *exclusion fields*, or allow you to specify N(o) or Y(es), according to whether you want to include or exclude messages with certain attributes. The rules for including and excluding messages are as follows:

- If you leave all the fields on a panel blank, the criteria specified on the other panels determine what messages are displayed. For example, if you leave the System Specification panel blank, messages from all connected regions are potentially available for display.
  - However, if you do *not* specify any criteria (that is, if you leave the criteria fields on all the panels blank), the profile receives *no* messages.
- If you specify inclusion and exclusion values for a particular criterion, the inclusion values take priority. The exclusion values are then applied to the resulting set of included messages.

For example, using message ID as a criterion, if you want to include all message IDs except the IDs starting with AAA111, you can use the following values:

- A\*:9\* as inclusion values
- AAA111\* as exclusion values
- Messages are selected for display only if they meet the criteria specified on all panels. For example, YES in the Sess field on the Message Job Specification panel specifies that only SESS type messages are displayed, even if messages of other types meet the criteria specified on the other panels.
- Items selected with N or Y have an OR relationship. For example, if you include routing codes 1, 2, and 11, messages that have a routing code of 1 or 2 or 11, or a combination of these codes, are displayed if they satisfy the other criteria.
- If you complete an exclusion field or specify N, a message that meets this criterion is not displayed, even if it satisfies all the inclusion criteria.

**Note:** The consolidated console does not receive messages suppressed by EventView rules.

# Access the Message Profile Definitions

To access the message profile definitions, enter /EADMIN.C.M at the prompt.

The Message Profiles panel appears.

This panel lists all the message profiles in the knowledge base. You can enter action codes to perform actions on existing message profiles, or press F4 (Add) to add a new profile.

# How You Define a Message Profile

To add a message profile, press F4 (Add) from the Message Profiles panel. You define the profile by using the following panels:

#### **Profile Details**

Enables you to identify the profile. Complete this panel.

#### **System Specification**

Enables you to use the system associated with a message as a selection criterion.

#### **Message Specification**

Enables you to use the message ID as a selection criterion.

#### **Job Name Specification**

Enables you to use the job associated with a message as a selection criterion.

#### **OS Codes Specification**

Enables you to use the routing and descriptor codes associated with a message as selection criteria.

#### **Message Job Specification**

Enables you to use the message type and level, and the job type and class associated with a message as selection criteria.

You can create a profile to capture particular messages (for example, tape mount messages) or messages for particular jobs (for example, production CICS jobs). You do not need to complete every panel for most profile definitions. However, complete at least one of the criteria panels. If you leave all the criteria panels blank, the profile blocks all messages.

#### **Profile Details**

Use the Profile Details panel to identify the message profile. Specify the profile name, ID, and description. All profile panels contain this information.

**Note:** You cannot use the value 2 as the profile ID.

Only profiles that have IDs corresponding to those set for a parameter in the CCONSOLIDATN parameter group are available for use in the local region. The parameter can exclude certain IDs. To display the value of the parameter, enter the **/PARMS** shortcut to access the list of parameter groups and browse the CCONSOLIDATN parameter group.

The Profile Details panel also contains the following information:

- Profile status
- Whether to profile for solicited messages
- History of when the profile was created and last updated

Only profiles with an ACTIVE status can be activated for use.

## **System Criteria**

From the Profile Details panel, press F8 (Forward) to display the System Specification panel. You can specify the systems for which messages are captured.

The values you use in the Systems to be Included or Excluded fields are the system management facilities (SMF) ID or the region domain ID. The value type is indicated at the bottom of the panel as SMFID or NMDID respectively, and is set in the CCONSOLIDATN parameter group.

The criteria can be specific, generic, or in a range.

Leave the fields blank to allow messages for all the connected systems to be captured. These messages are captured only if other criteria are specified in the profile and the messages satisfy those criteria.

## Message ID Criteria

From the System Specification panel, press F8 (Forward) to display the Message Specification panel. You can specify the IDs (or generic IDs, for example, \$HASP\*) of the messages you want to capture. The message ID is the first word of a message.

The values can be specific, generic, or in a range.

Leave the fields blank to capture messages with any ID. These messages are captured only if other criteria are specified in the profile and the messages satisfy those criteria.

#### Job Criteria

From the Message Specification panel, press F8 (Forward) to display the Job Name Specification panel. You can name the jobs (and started tasks) for which messages are captured.

The values can be specific, generic, or in a range.

Leave the fields blank to capture messages for all jobs. These messages are captured only if other criteria are specified in the profile and the messages satisfy those criteria.

## **System Codes Criteria**

From the Job Name Specification panel, press F8 (Forward) to display the OS Codes Specification panel. You can specify the route and descriptor codes assigned to messages that are captured. Messages can contain one or a combination of the codes you specify. If a message contains codes that you exclude specifically, the message is not selected.

You can exclude certain codes by typing **N** under the codes, include certain codes by typing **Y** under the codes, and leave the other code fields blank. A message containing any of the included codes is selected unless the message also contains an excluded code.

Leave the fields blank to capture messages that contain any route and descriptor codes. If other criteria are specified in the profile and the message satisfies those criteria, the message is displayed on the consolidated console.

## Message Type, Level, and Job Criteria

From the OS Codes Specification panel, press F8 (Forward) to display the Message Job Specification panel. You can specify the message types, and message levels, job types, and job classes assigned to messages that are captured.

You can include or exclude certain items in each criteria type, but not both (except for the Broadcast field under Message Levels). For example, if you want to accept immediate action messages but not broadcast messages, specify Y in the Immediate Action field and N in the Broadcast field.

Leave the fields blank to allow messages of any type, level, job type, or job class. If other criteria are specified in the profile and the message satisfies those criteria, the message is displayed on the consolidated console.

#### **Message Types**

Message types correspond to the operands of the MONITOR or STOPMN system commands. For example, messages generated because of the MONITOR SESS command have the SESS type.

#### Message Levels

Message levels indicate the relative importance of a message.

**Note:** The broadcast level has precedence over all other message criteria. If broadcast messages are allowed, the message profile passes all broadcast messages irrespective of the other criteria.

#### **Job Types**

Job types are as follows:

Job

Indicates a batch job.

STC

Indicates a started task.

In a JES3 environment, a started task has a job type of Job.

**TSU** 

Indicates a TSO user.

#### Unknown

Indicates a job type that is not one of the previous types.

#### **Job Classes**

The job class is assigned by the CLASS parameter of the JOB JCL statement.

## **Example: Profile Specific Messages**

In this example, the organization has two branches: an eastern branch and a western branch. You want to create a profile to capture all tape mount messages for all the production systems running in the eastern data center, but do not want to capture messages for development jobs. The job classes assigned to tape mount requests are 1, 2, and 3.

From the Message Profiles panel, press F4 (Add) to add a profile. A Profile Details panel appears. You can press F8 (Forward) to scroll forward through the panels or enter the panel index number at the Command prompt to select a specific panel. (Pressing F11 (Panels) displays of a list of panels and panel index numbers.)

Use the following panels in this example:

- Profile Details
- System Specification
- Message Specification
- Job Name Specification
- Message Job Specification

On the Profile Details panel, type a unique profile name (TAPEMOUNTS), a unique ID (127), a description of the profile (Tape Mounts for Eastern Production Jobs), and assign a status. Assign a status of ACTIVE so that the profile can be activated.

The following panel shows the completed Profile Details.

PROD			
+			
+ Profile Status			
+ Include Solicited Messages? +   Solicited Type NO (No, Other, Nothr, Yes, All)   + +			
+ History			
Profile Created Profile Last Updated Profile Status Updated   Userid Userid Userid   Date THU 25-MAY-2006 Date   Time 14.48.27 Time Time			
F1=Help F2=Split F3=File F4=Save F8=Forward F9=Swap F11=Panels F12=Cancel			

Press F8 (Forward) to scroll forward to the System Specification panel. You do not want to capture messages for any western branch systems, so you complete the exclusion fields. All western branch systems start with the letters WST, so WST\* is typed to exclude all western branch systems.

The following panel shows the completed System Specification.

PROD EventView : System Command ===>	m SpecificationMCPROFIL-0000 Function=UPDATE		
+ Message Classification Profile			
Systems to be Included	Systems to be Excluded   +		
	. LICTY		
Note : Identify the systems by using SMFID			
F1=Help F2=Split F3=File F7=Backward F8=Forward F9=Swap	F4=Save F11=Panels F12=Cancel		

Press F8 (Forward) to scroll forward to the Message Specification panel. You only want to display IEF233A messages, which are requests for tape mounts, so you complete the inclusion fields.

The following panel shows the completed Message Specification.

PROD EventView : Messac Command ===>	ge SpecificationMCPROFIL-0000 Function=UPDATE		
+ Message Classification Profile			
Message IDs to be Included			
IEF233A			
F1=Help F2=Split F3=File F7=Backward F8=Forward F9=Swap			

Press F8 (Forward) to scroll forward to the Job Name Specification panel. You do not want to capture messages for development jobs. All development jobs in the eastern branch start with the letters DEV, so DEV\* is typed in an exclusion field.

The following panel shows the completed Job Name Specification.

PROD			
+ Message Classification Profile+   Name TAPEMOUNTS ID 127 (1 - 128)     Description Tape Mounts for Eastern Production Jobs			
Job Names to be Included   Job Names to be Excluded			
F1=Help F2=Split F3=File F4=Save F7=Backward F8=Forward F9=Swap F10=Scrllst F11=Panels F12=Cancel			

Enter **6** at the prompt to display the Message Job Specification panel. Here you want to capture messages for jobs only, in job classes 1 (for jobs that need one tape mounted), 2 (for jobs that need two tapes mounted), and 3 (for jobs that need three tapes mounted).

The following panel shows the completed Message Job Specification.

```
PROD----- EventView : Message Job Specification ------MCPROFIL-0000
Command ===>
                                                       Function=UPDATE
 -----+
 Name ... TAPEMOUNTS ID ..... 127 (1 - 128)
 Description .... Tape Mounts for Eastern Production Jobs
  ______
 Message Types ( Y =Include, N =Exclude, Blank =Don't care )
Jobnames .. ___ Status .. ___ Active .. ___ Sess .. ___
 Message Levels ( Y =Include, N =Exclude, Blank =Don't care )

WTOR .. ___ Immediate Action .. ___ Critical Eventual .. ___
  Eventual .. ___ Informational .. ___
                                        Broadcast ..
                   ( Y =Include, N =Exclude, Blank =Don't care )
 Job Types
       Job .. YES STC .. ___ TSU .. ___ Unknown .. ___
                     ( Y =Include, N =Exclude, Blank =Don't care )
 Job Classes
            ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUWXYZ0123456789
 (A-Z,0-9) ..
                                     YYY
F1=Help F2=Split F3=File F4=Save F7=Backward F9=Swap
F7=Backward
                                               F11=Panels F12=Cancel
```

### **Example: Profile Messages for Specific Jobs**

In this example, you want to create a profile to capture messages for certain CICS jobs on the production systems in the eastern and the western branches. The branches use only one test system, ETST. You assign a status of INACTIVE, as you do not want the profile to be used immediately. You only want to capture messages that have routing codes of 1, 2, or 11.

From the Message Profiles panel, you press F4 (Add) to add a profile. A Profile Details panel appears. You can press F8 (Forward) to scroll forward through the panels or enter the panel index number at the Command prompt to select a specific panel. (Pressing F11 (Panels) displays a list of panels and panel index numbers.)

Use the following panels in this example:

- Profile Details
- System Specification
- Job Name Specification
- OS Codes Specification

The following panels show the completed message profile:

PROD EventView : Profile Details	MCPR0FIL-0000
Command ===>	Function=UPDATE
+ Message Classification Profile   Name CICSMESSAGES ID 126 (1 - 128)   Description Messages for all production CICS Jobs +	 
+ Profile Status    Profile Status INACTIVE (Active/Inactive)	·

PROD EventView : Sys Command ===>	tem SpecificationMCPROFIL-0000 Function=UPDATE
Name CICSMESSAGES ID   Description Messages for all p	
	-+ +
	Systems to be Excluded
l	ETST

### **Example: Profile All Messages**

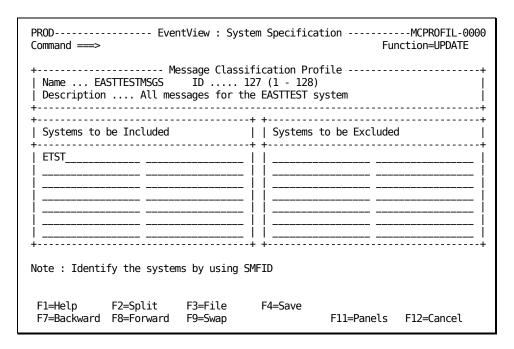
**Note:** This example is for illustration only. In a multisystem environment, if you have not implemented EventView message rules to provide a high level of message suppression, using this message profile can result in a very high volume of message flow to the consolidated console.

In this example, you want to create a profile to capture the messages for all connected systems. You allow all messages by excluding a system that is not part of the network. The following shows an example where DMMY is the excluded system.

PROD EventView : Syste	m SpecificationMCPROFIL-0000 Function=UPDATE		
+ Message Classification Profile			
Systems to be Included	Systems to be Excluded		
	DMMY		
Note : Identify the systems by using SMFID			
F1=Help F2=Split F3=File F7=Backward F8=Forward F9=Swap	F4=Save F11=Panels F12=Cancel		

### **Example: Profile Messages for a Particular System**

In this example, you want to create a profile to capture the messages for a particular system. The following shows an example where ETST is the system whose messages you want to monitor.



### Change the Activation Status of a Message Profile

A message profile must have an ACTIVE status before it can be activated for use. If you only want to change the Profile Status Field for a profile, change the value directly from the Message Profiles panel.

To change the value to ACTIVE, type **A** next to all the profiles you want to update and press Enter.

The value in the Status column for the profiles changes to ACTIVE.

To change the value to INACTIVE, type I next to all the profiles you want to update and press Enter.

The value in the Status column for the profiles changes to INACTIVE.

### **Activate Message Profiles**

**Note:** The message profile activation process can halt the region for a short period of time. After this period, the region continues from where it left off, without loss of control or data. However, delays might occur in responses to system activities. Unless the activation of the message profiles is of a high priority, perform this task when the system is not busy.

After you have created or updated message profiles, you must activate (load) them in each of the linked regions before they can be used.

To activate message profiles, use *one* of the following methods:

- Select the A option on the System Console Consolidation panel, or enter the /EADMIN.C.A path (available to focal point regions only).
- Enter **ACTIVATE** at the prompt on the Message Profiles panel (available to focal point regions only). To display the panel, enter the **/EADMIN.C.M** path.
- Action the CCONSOLIDATN parameter group (available to focal point and subordinate regions). To display the list of parameter groups, enter the /PARMS shortcut.

A region only activates profiles with a status of ACTIVE.

Profiles with a status of ACTIVE also become active automatically whenever the region is started. Profiles with a status of INACTIVE are not activated when the region is started.

### Message Profile Size Considerations

If the total size of the profiles loaded is too large, activation of message profiles can fail. If the problem occurs, a message is generated to indicate by how much the size should be reduced. The ID of the message is either RMCCST11 or RMINWI36.

**Note:** For information about how to correct the problem, see the message online help.

### Maintenance of Message Profile Definitions

In a focal point region, you can browse, update, copy, and delete message profile definitions from the Message Profiles panel.

**Note:** For information about how to assign message profiles to individual users, see the *Security Guide*.

## **Monitor Messages Using Consolidated Console**

The console message consolidation facility enables authorized users to view console message traffic from multiple systems on a single console (referred to as a *consolidated console*). An authorized user can create *message profiles* that contain criteria to identify and classify messages. When you use a consolidated console, you use message profiles to select the messages for viewing. All messages that match the criteria of the profiles are displayed on your consolidated console.

**Note:** The facility is fully functional in focal point regions only. In subordinate regions, only local console message traffic is visible.

### **Message Monitor**

The message monitor is based on Operator Console Services (OCS).

### **Prefix Messages with the System Name**

Use the following command to specify whether you want your messages prefixed with the originating system name:

PROFILE AOMPRFSN={NO | YES}

For example, to prefix the displayed messages with the system name, enter PROFILE AOMPRFSN=YES.

The changed value is valid for the current session only. If you want to specify a value to use whenever you access the message monitor as a consolidated console, specify the value at the Message Monitor Message Formatting panel of your user profile.

### **Consolidated Console Setup Requirements**

To use the consolidated console, you must be authorized to use OCS and AOM, and authorized to receive AOM messages. This information is specified in your user ID definition.

In addition, your user profile must be set up to receive the relevant messages.

### **Authorization Requirements**

Your authority for using the consolidated console should be set up by the administrator.

If the User Access Maintenance Subsystem (UAMS) is used to manage authorization, enter the **/UAMS.B** path to browse your user ID definition.

The authorization requirements are as follows:

UAMS Panel (Page Number)	Field	Value
Access Authorities (3)	Operations Management	Υ
	Operator Console Services	Υ
OCS Details (5)	Initial OCS Command	-\$RMCCOCS
AOM General Details (10)	AOM Message Receipt	Υ
	Console Routing Codes	ALL
	Message Level Screening	ALL

### **Profile Requirements**

To enable you to receive messages on a consolidated console, ensure that the following fields on the Message Monitor Message Receipt panel of your user profile have the values Y:

- Receive Unsolicited Messages
- Receive System Messages

To access your user profile, enter the **=U.UP** path.

### **Access the Consolidated Console**

From the primary menu, enter **O** to access OCS. If the lower right of your screen is not displaying CC ON or CC PND, enter **CCON** to change the monitor to a consolidated console. If an RMCCOCO7 message is displayed or if the status is CC PND, your console is unable to receive system messages because your profile is not suitable for the consolidated console.

The console starts displaying the messages that match the message profiles available to you. You must have at least one message profile enabled to view any message.

#### Notes:

- If console consolidation is disabled, you can monitor local messages only. (Message consolidation is enabled or disabled in the CCONSOLIDATN parameter group. For information about parameter groups, see the Reference Guide.
- You can also use the Command Entry facility as a consolidated console. To access the Command Entry panel, type CMD at a prompt, or press F5 from OCS. Enter CCON to turn on console message consolidation. The Command Entry facility keeps the messages that scroll off the panel, that is, you can bring those messages back onto the panel by pressing the F7 or F8 scroll function keys.

### If the Console Does Not Display System Messages

If the console does not display system messages, use the following procedure to investigate the cause and correct the problem. You may not need to complete all of the steps if the problem is corrected before the end of the procedure.

Enter PROFILE CC and ensure that at least one of your message profiles is enabled.
 If a defined message profile is not accessible, check its status. When you load the profiles, only those with an ACTIVE status are loaded.

2. Enter **PROFILE** to display your console profile. Ensure that the values of the following profile parameters are as indicated:

#### UNSOL

Set to YES.

#### **AOMMSG**

Set to YES.

#### **AOMMSGLV**

Set to other than NONE.

You can correct the value by issuing the following command for each relevant parameter:

PROFILE profile-parameter=parameter-value

The changed value is valid for the current session only. If you want to change a value permanently, change it in your user profile.

If the AOMMSG and AOMMSGLV parameters are not displayed or if the AOMMSGLV parameters cannot be changed, you need to update your user ID definition according to the guidelines in the next step; otherwise, proceed to Step 4.

**Note:** If you are not authorized to correct errors found in the following steps, report the errors to the administrator.

3. Enter the **/UAMS.B** path to browse your user ID definition. Ensure that your AOM General Details panel displays the following values:

#### **AOM Message Receipt**

Set to Y.

#### **Console Routing Codes**

Set to ALL.

#### **Message Level Screening**

Set to ALL.

When these values are correct, you can then update the corresponding profile parameters as indicated in the previous step.

You should also ensure that the Initial OCS Command field on your OCS Details panel has the value \$RMCCOCS. This command ensures that the message monitor is always presented to you as a consolidated console.

Ensure that console consolidation is activated by the CCONSOLIDATN region parameter group.

### Use Message Profiles to Select the Messages to Monitor

In a consolidated console, you can use predefined message profiles to select the messages you want to monitor.

To access your list of message profiles, issue the **PROFILE CC** command. The Private Message Profile Control panel displays the list of message profiles that you can use to profile your consolidated console.

The initial status of the message profiles are as follows:

- If you disabled the message profile in your user profiles, the profile appears with a status of DISABLED.
- If you enabled the message profile in your user profiles, the profile appears with a status of ENABLED or PENDING.

Use the **D** or **E** action codes to disable or enable selected profiles for this session with your consolidated console. Enabled profiles have a status of PENDING if your monitoring environment cannot receive the requested messages (for example, if the UNSOL profile parameter has a value of NO indicating that you cannot receive unsolicited messages).

You can use the F10 (MsgFlow) function key to switch the value of the AOMMSG profile parameter between NO and YES. This parameter indicates whether you can receive AOM messages. The value must be YES for you to receive messages at your consolidated console.

Use the F11 (LstSort) function key to sort the list of message profiles by name or by ID. The initial sort is by name.

### Reply to a WTOR Message From the Consolidated Console

**Note:** You can reply to resource or service related WTOR messages from the status or graphical monitor by using the W command.

Use the following command to reply to a local WTOR message:

```
SYSCMD REPLY wtor-id, reply-text
```

Use the following command to reply to a remote WTOR message:

```
ROUTE DOMAIN=domain-id SYSCMD REPLY wtor-id, reply-text
```

The value of *domain-id* is the domain ID of the region that sends the remote WTOR message. The ID appears as a prefix to the message if the value of your PREFSYS profile parameter is YES.

For information about the SYSCMD and ROUTE commands, see the online help.

**Note:** You can use the EQUATE command to reduce the typing required when issuing a command. For example, you can equate text as follows:

```
EQUATE / SYSCMD REPLY+
EQUATE domain-id ROUTE DOMAIN=domain-id SYSCMD REPLY+
```

You can then use the following commands to reply respectively to a local or a remote WTOR message:

```
/ wtor-id,reply-text
domain-id wtor-id,reply-text
```

For information about the EQUATE command, see the online help.

To ensure that the required text strings are always equated in the region, specify the EQUATE commands in the EQUATES parameter group.

### **Exit the Consolidated Console**

Exit your consolidated console in one of the following ways:

- To exit the consolidated console and remain in OCS or your Command Entry panel, issue the CCOFF command. You can use the CCON command to return to the consolidated console.
- To exit the consolidated console and return to the previous panel, press F3.

# Chapter 18: Configuring the Event Simulator

This section contains the following topics:

Event Simulator (see page 195)

Generate Simulated Events (see page 195)

Results of Event Simulation (see page 197)

Maintenance of Simulated Event Definitions (see page 198)

### **Event Simulator**

The event simulator enables you to correctly assess the impact of a loaded system image on the operations of the local system. The MSGAWARENESS parameter group controls the availability of the simulator.

By using the simulator, you can generate simulated events and review the returned results. A simulated event returns the expected results. It does not invoke the actual actions. The results of the simulation identify the following affected active definitions:

- Resource definitions
- EventView rules
- Consolidated console message profiles
- Other product-specific definitions and records

### **Generate Simulated Events**

#### To generate simulated events

1. Enter /EADMIN.E at the prompt.

The Simulated Events List appears.

- 2. Do one of the following:
  - If the required event definition is not on the list, press F4 (Add) to define and generate the event.
  - If the required event definition is on the list, do one of the following:
    - Use the SV or SI action code to simulate one or more defined events.
    - Enter ALL SI at the prompt to simulate all defined events.

#### **Define a Simulated Event**

#### To define a simulated event

- 1. From the Simulated Event List, enter **/EADMIN.E** at the prompt.
- 2. The simulated event definitions appear.
- 3. Press F4 (Add). You can also use the C action code to open a copy of an existing definition that you can modify.
  - The Simulate Message panel appears.
- 4. Specify the message you want to simulate and the type of information you want returned.

You can enter a question mark (?) in the Message Text field to display the list of messages learned by the region. If you select a message from the list, the panel is automatically updated for any associated job name, routing codes, and descriptor codes.

- 5. Do *one* of the following:
  - If you want to generate the simulated event, press F6 (Simulate). To save the results, press F3 (File) or F4 (Save).
  - If you do not want to generate the simulated event now, press F3 (File) to save the definition for later use.

**Note:** Filed message definitions are *not* retained across region restarts.

### **Results of Event Simulation**

The results of event simulation are returned on the Simulation Results List panel.

```
PROD------ Automation Services : Simulation Results List -----
Command ===>
                                                         Scroll ===> CSR
                S/B=Browse Definition U=Update Definition C=Collapse E=Expand
   Simulated Message Details:
    Message Text ... $HASP170 PRT1
                                    INTERRUPTED
                                 Jobtype ..... JOB Message Type ... WTO
    Jobname ...... JES2
    Route Codes .... 7
                                 Desc. Codes ... 4
   Dflt EventView Ruleset ..... $$$$$URS
        Default ruleset processing performed as per:
          Message Delivery ... YES
                                          Perform Mods.? .. YES
          Perform Actions? ... YES Collect Statistics? YES
                                          Log Activity? ... NO
                                          Learn New Msgs?
   Miss No Consolidated Console profiles hit for the following reason:
          No Consolidated Console Profiles Hit
   Hit PRT Resource Name ..... PRT1
                                         JES Printer PRT1
        Monitor Message ...... $HASP170 PRT1*
        Extended Actions:
```

For the previous example, the results indicate that the:

- Messages are passed on by the \$\$\$\$\$URS rule set but no rules are triggered
- PRT1 resource becomes degraded but no actions are invoked

If the results are not satisfactory for a displayed definition, you can use the U action code to update it. For example, if you enter U next to the PRT resource line, the Status Monitor Message Details panel displays. You can then update the appropriate resource message rule.

#### Summarize the Results

When a simulated event affects many definitions, the results are displayed over several panels; however, you can summarize the results.

To summarize the results, enter **ALL C** at the prompt.

The results appear as a list of affected definitions.

**Note:** You can use the ALL E command to display all details of all the results. You can use the C and E action codes to change the view of selected results.

### **Maintenance of Simulated Event Definitions**

You can browse, update, copy, and delete simulated event definitions. To delete all definitions, enter **ALL D** at the prompt.

**Note:** If you update the message attributes, you are creating a message. Previously stored simulation results are not retained.

# **Chapter 19: Implementing Activity Logs**

This section contains the following topics:

Activity Logs (see page 199)

Implement Online Activity Logging (see page 200)

Administer Online Activity Log Files (see page 201)

Swap the Online Log (see page 202)

Online Log Exit (see page 202)

Online Logging Procedure (see page 204)

Hardcopy Activity Log (see page 206)

Swap the Hardcopy Log (see page 208)

Reuse of Hardcopy Log Data Sets (see page 209)

Cross-Reference of Hardcopy Logs (see page 209)

I/O Errors on the Hardcopy Log (see page 210)

Enable the Logging of SPO and Unsolicited PPO Messages (see page 210)

Write to the System Log (see page 211)

### **Activity Logs**

The activity logging facility records all the activity in your region. You can use the activity logs to help determine the cause of problems.

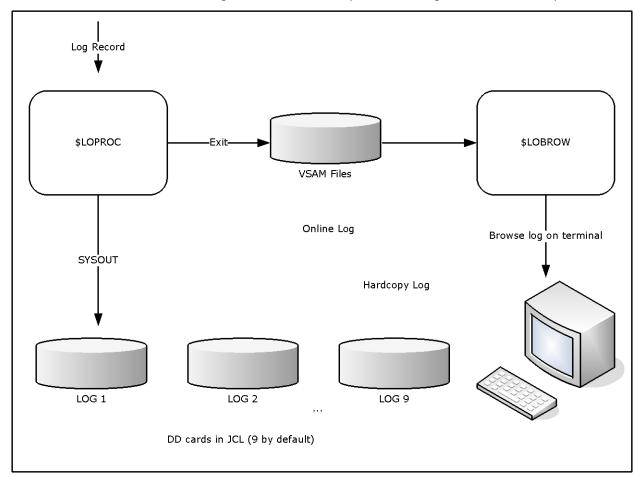
Two separate activity log formats exist:

- Online
- Hardcopy

Log records are written to both formats.

By default, activity logs contain the following information:

- All commands entered
- All responses to commands entered
- Any unsolicited messages received from VTAM or the operating system, provided the related interfaces are available
- All messages explicitly written to the log by NCL procedures



The following illustration shows the path that the log record takes in the system.

The online activity log is supplied by the distributed procedure \$LOPROC. The \$LOPROC procedure writes log data to VSAM files (three by default). The VSAM files are accessed by a second procedure, \$LOBROW, which allows online browsing of the log.

**Note:** \$LOPROC and \$LOBROW are the default procedure names. You can change these names by using the LOGFILES parameter group in Customizer (**/PARMS**).

### **Implement Online Activity Logging**

During initialization, the region allocates, by default, three VSAM log files for online logging. However, you can allocate up to seven files.

**Note:** The log file IDs are of the form NMLOG*nn* and the data set names are of the form *dsnpref.rname*.NMLOG*nn*. (*dsnpref* is the data set prefix used during product installation and *rname* is the name of the region.)

### **Use Additional Log Files**

If you want to make more than three files available to the region, define the new VSAM files and then customize the LOGFILES parameter group by defining additional logging data sets.

#### To customize the LOGFILES parameter group

1. Enter /PARMS at the prompt.

The Customizer: Parameter Groups list appears.

2. Enter **U** beside the LOGFILES parameter group.

The Customizer: Parameter Group panel for the LOGFILES parameter group appears.

- 3. Press F8 (Forward) to display the next page.
- 4. Complete the fields for each file you want to make available. To allocate more files, press F8 (Forward) again.
- 5. When you have specified the required number of log files, press F6 (Action) to allocate and open the files.
- 6. Press F6 (Action).

The changes are applied.

7. Press F3 (File).

The changes are saved.

Note: For more information about using this panel, press F1 (Help).

### **Administer Online Activity Log Files**

From the Activity Log: Administration menu, you can do the following:

- Swap active activity logs
- List all days contained in log files and browse logs for a particular date
- List all log files and browse a particular file

To administer online activity log files, enter /LOADMIN at the prompt.

The Activity Log: Administration menu appears.

Note: For information about the options available on this menu, press F1 (Help).

### Swap the Online Log

The online activity log automatically swaps to a fresh VSAM file when each file fills up.

You can manually swap your currently active VSAM file if you want to free a particular log file (for example, for backups).

**Important!** Swapping the current VSAM log causes the \$LOPROC procedure to write all subsequent activity log records to the next VSAM log. If this log was previously used, it is reset. Therefore, you can no longer browse the old records that it contained.

#### To swap the online activity log

1. Enter /LOGSWAP at the prompt.

The Activity Log Services: Confirm Swap Log panel appears.

2. Press F6 to request the log swap, or F12 to cancel your request.

**Note:** If the \$LOPROC procedure encounters a VSAM error when it is logging activity to an online log file, it automatically swaps to the next log file.

### **Online Log Exit**

You can create an NCL procedure to intercept, analyze, and react to the messages that are sent to the activity log.

Use the LOGFILES parameter group in Customizer to specify the name of your exit.

The exit is executed every time a message is sent to the log. Using the exit to perform complex functions can degrade the performance of the region.

**Note:** Ensure that your log exit procedure is well-tested before you put it into production.

### Variables Available to the Activity Log Exit

The following variables are available to the activity log exit:

#### **&#LO\$RECORD**

Contains records of the following formats:

#### time\_generated user\_id terminal\_id message\_text

The text of the message starts at the fourth word of the record.

#### arrival\_time origin region \$\$AOMTIME\$\$ aom\_time message\_text

The text of the message starts at the sixth word of the record. This format lets you identify AOM-sourced messages.

You can change the contents of this variable. To suppress the message from the log, set the variable to NOLOG.

**Note:** For more information, see the &LOGREAD verb in the *Network Control Language Reference Guide*.

#### \$LOG

Specifies a Mapped Data Object (MDO) that contains the message attributes. The MDO is mapped by the \$MSG map.

You can use the &ASSIGN verb to query the MDO.

**Note:** For information about querying MDO components and additional variables, see the *Network Control Language Programming Guide*.

#### **Example: Remove Messages from the NCL Log**

The following shows an example procedure:

#### &CONTROL

```
-* TO REMOVE IKJ56247I MESSAGES FROM THE NCL LOG. *
-* **
&PARSE DELIM=' ' VARS=#L0$WORD* DATA=&#L0$RECORD
&IF .&#L0$WORD4 EQ .IKJ56247I &THEN +
&#L0$RECORD = NOLOG
```

### **Enable the Log Exit**

#### To enable the log exit

1. Enter /PARMS at the prompt.

The Customizer: Parameter Groups list appears.

2. Enter **U** beside the LOGFILES parameter group.

The Customizer : Parameter Group panel for the LOGFILES parameter group appears.

- 3. Enter the name of your activity log exit in the Log Exit Name field.
- 4. Press F6 (Action).

The changes are applied.

5. Press F3 (File).

The changes are saved.

### **Online Logging Procedure**

The default online logging procedure is \$LOPROC. This procedure is designed to work with the online browsing procedure \$LOBROW.

You can replace the \$LOPROC and \$LOBROW procedures with your own customized NCL procedures. Alternatively, you can write a customized log browsing procedure to present the supplied data files (from \$LOPROC) in your own format.

### **Structure of Supplied Log Files**

The supplied log files (NMLOG01, NMLOG02, and NMLOG03) have the following physical file structure:

■ The record key has the following format:

YYYYMMDDHHMMSSHSnnnn

nnnn=1000 + (reset every 100th of a second) and key length=20 bytes

A record has the following contents

#### **ORIGIN**

Contains the terminal name.

#### **REGION**

Contains the user ID.

#### **TEXT**

Contains the message text to display in the activity log.

#### **MSGATTR**

Contains the 2-byte color/highlight indicator. Colors are R=red, Y=yellow, W=white, B=blue, G=green, T=turquoise, or P=pink. Highlight values are R=reverse, B=blink, U=underscore, or N=none.

#### **ORIGTIM**

Contains the time at the remote domain.

#### **ORIGDMN**

Contains the name of the originating domain.

#### ORIGSRC

Contains the ID of the remote terminal.

**Note:** For more information, see the following references:

- The description of the &FILE OPEN verb in the *Network Control Language Reference Guide*.
- The Network Control Language Programming Guide.

### **How You Write Logging and Browsing Procedures**

To write your own customized NCL procedure to replace \$LOBROW, use the &FILE OPEN statement with FORMAT=DELIMITED.

You can store your log records in whatever file format you want. Your log browsing procedure must match this file format.

**Note:** For more information, see the descriptions of the following verbs in the *Network Control Language Reference Guide*:

- &LOGREAD
- &LOGCONT
- &LOGDEL

### **Implement Logging and Browsing Procedures**

After you write your own browsing procedure or your own logging and browsing procedures, you implement them for use.

#### To implement your procedures

- 1. Enter **U** next to the LOGFILES parameter group in Customizer.
- 2. Update the relevant fields.
- 3. Press F6 (Action).

Your procedures are used for logging and browsing.

4. Press F3 (File).

Your changes to the parameter group are saved.

### **Hardcopy Activity Log**

A region can have more than one hardcopy activity log, of which only one is open for logging.

Your region can be configured to perform logging to disk, tape, or hard copy. From one to nine logs can be specified by including the required number of DD statements in the execution JCL. Logging can be specified to wrap when the last log is full or is swapped.

To obtain the status of these logs, use the SHOW LOGS command.

**Note:** When logging to disk the following DCB attributes should be used:

DSORG=PS, RECFM=VBA, LRECL=137, BLKSIZE=15476

### Format of Logged Information

Each entry recorded on the log has the following format:

12.04.23.12 SMITH TERM54 +V NET, ACT, ID=NCP001

This entry consists of the following information:

- A time stamp in the format hh.mm.ss.hs (where hh is the hour, mm is the minute, ss is the second, and hs is the hundredth of a second)
- The user ID that entered the command or logged the message
- The terminal from which the command was entered or to which a message is sent
- The text of the message or command

Commands are highlighted with a plus sign (+) prefixed to the text to make it easier to distinguish commands from messages when browsing the log. If the command entered is an unsolicited VTAM command, it is highlighted and prefixed with an equals sign (=).

#### Format of Logged Timer-initiated Commands

Commands executed as the result of a timer-initiated command are prefixed by a plus sign, followed by the identity number of the timer command responsible. This identity number has the following format: #nnnn.

#### **Example: Logged Timer-initiated Command**

This example shows the log record of a command initiated by a timer:

15.00.00.01 NETOPER CNTL01 +#0005 D BFRUSE

#### Format of Logged Commands Executed in Background Environments

Commands executed under the control of background environments are identified by the following keywords in the user ID field for the command text and any resulting messages:

#### **BG-SYS**

**Background System Processor** 

#### **BG-MON**

**Background Monitor** 

#### **BG-LOG**

Background Logger

#### Format of Logged Commands from NCL Procedure-dependent Environment

If a command is executed from an NCL procedure-dependent environment (&INTCMD), the node field on the log contains the NCL ID of the process issuing the command.

### Format of the Hardcopy Log

The hardcopy log data set has the following format:

- A heading on each page—contains the day and date on which the log was created and the system identifier (NMID) of the originating region.
- A log identifier on the right side of the page. The log identifier is the ddname under which the log was created. This log identifier assists log collation after printing.
- 60 lines on each page—this format can be altered to suit your requirements using the SYSPARMS LOGPAGE operand.

Note: For information about LOGPAGE, see the Reference Guide.

### Swap the Hardcopy Log

Swapping the current log frees the log for immediate printing. Swapping the log is possible only when another unused log remains to which logging can continue. You can specify up to nine logs. Logs do not need to be consecutive.

To swap the log, enter the LOGSWAP command.

When a log is swapped, the log status, the requesting user ID, and the reason for the swap are recorded. You can display these details with the SHOW LOGS command.

Each of the logs is identified in the JCL member by the LOGn ddname. n is in the range one to nine.

#### **Example: Log Name**

This example defines the LOG4 ddname:

//LOG4 DD SYSOUT=A, FREE=CLOSE

Mixing of device types is valid. Inclusion of FREE=CLOSE prints the log when it is released by the LOGSWAP command.

### Reuse of Hardcopy Log Data Sets

Wrapping lets you reuse a LOG data set when all of the available LOG data sets have been used.

The LOGWRAP SYSPARM determines whether log data set wrapping is allowed. You set the value of this SYSPARM in the Are Activity Logs to Wrap? field when you customize the LOGFILES parameter group in Customizer (/PARMS).

If you specify NO (the default) in the Are Activity Logs to Wrap? field, then wrapping is not permitted. When all the LOG data sets have been used due to successive LOGSWAP commands, the previous LOG data sets cannot be reused. After the last LOG data set is used, any further LOGSWAP commands are rejected.

If you specify YES in the Are Activity Logs to Wrap? field, log wrapping is allowed according to the following rules:

■ If you direct your LOG data sets to SYSOUT, then, as each LOG nDD statement is used, the data set is unallocated because FREE=CLOSE. In this case, you can reissue an ALLOC command to reallocate another SYSOUT file under the same ddname. For example:

ALLOC DD=LOG3 SYSOUT=A FREE=CLOSE

This ddname is now available for use as another LOG data set. Subsequent LOGSWAP operations can now reuse this LOG data set rather than rejecting the command when the last LOG data set is used.

If the LOG DD statements point to sequential data sets, log wrapping overwrites the earlier LOG data held in these data sets. Archive the existing data before allowing the wrap to occur.

# **Cross-Reference of Hardcopy Logs**

To help operations staff to piece the full log together, certain information is recorded on the last and first lines of swapped LOG data sets.

The first line of a new log contains the reason for the swap, or the initiating user ID.

The last message printed on a swapped log is the ddname of the new log. Also printed at the start of the new log is the ddname or logical ID for the previous log.

### I/O Errors on the Hardcopy Log

If an I/O error occurs on a log, the log is closed and the next available log is automatically swapped to, if one is available, and logging continues. This also applies to data set full conditions when logging to disk.

If the I/O error occurs on the last available log, a warning message is sent to all monitor terminals informing them that logging has ceased. The STATUS command also includes a warning message if logging is stopped. All log messages are passed to LOGPROC for analysis even if no log output is possible.

# Enable the Logging of SPO and Unsolicited PPO Messages

By default, SPO and unsolicited PPO messages are not logged. If you want to log these messages, update the PPO parameter group.

#### Follow these steps:

1. Enter the **/PARMS** panel shortcut.

The parameter groups are listed.

- 2. Enter **U** next to the PPO parameter group.
- 3. Specify **YES** in the following fields as required:
  - Log Unsolicited PPO Messages?
  - Log SPO Messages?
- 4. Press F6 (Action).

The region starts logging the selected types of messages.

5. Press F3 (File).

You save the changes. The new settings apply when the region restarts.

# Write to the System Log

You can use the SYSPARMS SYSLOG operand to write all logged output or all VTAM PPO messages received to the system log.

To write all logged output to the system log also, enter the **SYSPARMS SYSLOG=YES** command.

To write all VTAM PPO messages to the system log also, enter the **SYSPARMS SYSLOG=PPO** command.

**Note:** For more information about the SYSPARMS SYSLOG operand, see the *Reference Guide*.

# Chapter 20: Setting Up the Alert Monitor

This section contains the following topics:

Access Alert Administration (see page 213)

Alert Monitor Trouble Ticket Interface (see page 214)

**Define Alert Monitor Filters** (see page 224)

Alert Monitor Display Format (see page 225)

**Enable Alerts from External Applications** (see page 226)

Alert Forwarding (see page 226)

Suppress State Change Alerts (see page 230)

CA Service Desk Integration (see page 231)

Implement the Alert History Function (see page 233)

### **Access Alert Administration**

Alert Monitor administration lets you define Alert Monitor interfaces, filters, and formats that apply to all users.

You perform Alert Monitor administration functions from the Alert Monitor : Administration Menu.

To access Alert Monitor administration functions, enter /ALADMIN at the prompt.

The Alert Monitor: Administration Menu appears.

### **Alert Monitor Trouble Ticket Interface**

The Alert Monitor provides an interface that lets you send alert information in the form of a *trouble ticket* to another interface automatically or manually.

The Alert Monitor supports the following interfaces for raising trouble tickets:

#### **Electronic Mail**

Sends an email describing the problem to a problem management application or a particular person. This method can be used to send tickets to multiple problem management applications.

#### Custom

Lets you write your own NCL procedure to deliver the trouble ticket to an application by whatever means you choose. For example, you can do the following:

- Invoke a REXX procedure, and pass alert variables.
- Send to any external interface, for example, problem-management product.
- Send to MVS system facilities, for example, system console, data sets, SMF user records, or batch jobs.
- Invoke applications, for example, FTP.

#### **Service Desk**

Creates a new CA Service Desk request from the alert details.

**Note:** If your CA Service Desk installation is configured with the optional ITIL application, incidents are created instead of requests.

Note: You can choose one interface only.

If you want the operator to supply information when requesting the creation of a ticket, you also need to set up the trouble ticket data entry definition.

#### **Define a Trouble Ticket Interface**

If you want to enable operators to raise trouble tickets on alerts, you must define the trouble ticket interface.

# To define a trouble ticket interface between the Alert Monitor and another application

1. From the Alert Monitor Administration Menu, select option I - Define Trouble Ticket Interface.

The Alert Monitor: Interface Definition panel appears.

2. Enter the type of interface that you want to define in the Interface Type field.

Note: To obtain a selection list of valid values, enter? in this field.

3. Press F6 (Action).

A panel appears where you can define an <a href="mailto:emailt

#### **Define an Email Trouble Ticket Interface**

This option enables alert details to be sent using email.

**Note:** To enable this option, you must ensure that your Systems Programmer enables SMTP support on this region's TCP/IP stack.

#### To define an email trouble ticket interface

1. Enter /ALADMIN at the prompt.

The Alert Monitor: Administration Menu appears.

2. Select option I - Define Trouble Ticket Interface.

The Alert Monitor: Trouble Ticket Interface Definition panel appears.

3. Enter **EMAIL** in the Interface Type field, and press F6 (Action).

The Email a Trouble Ticket panel appears.

4. Leave the &\$USRNAME variable in the Mail Address field. The variable works with the default <u>trouble ticket data entry definition</u> (see page 220) to specify the email address of the trouble ticket system to which you want to send the message. The data entry definition lets operators specify the address.

If you do not want operators to be able to change the address, specify the address in the Mail Address field and delete the fields in the data entry definition.

Complete the other fields:

#### **Host Name**

(IBM's Communications server only) Specifies the host name of this system. This is usually the NJE node name.

#### **SMTP Node Name**

(IBM's Communications Server only) Specifies the NJE node name on which the SMTP server runs. This is usually the same value as the Host Name.

#### **SMTP Job Name**

(IBM's Communications server only) Specifies the name of the address space in which SMTP runs. This is usually SMTP.

#### **SMTP DEST Id**

(CA TCPaccess CS for z/OS only) Specifies the destination ID in the REMOTE parameter of the SMTP statement in member APPCFGxx of the PARM data set.

#### **Exit Procedure Name**

Specifies the name of an NCL exit routine, in which you can customize the email message sent by this trouble ticket.

#### Subject

Specifies the heading to display as the subject of the email message.

#### **Enter Mail Text Below**

Specifies the mail message text. Press F1 (Help) for information about variables.

Press F3 (File).

The definition is saved.

## Define a Custom Trouble Ticket Interface

You use the custom interface if you want to use your own procedure to send trouble tickets.

## To define a custom trouble ticket interface

1. Enter /ALADMIN at the prompt.

The Alert Monitor: Administration Menu appears.

2. Select option I - Define Trouble Ticket Interface.

The Alert Monitor: Trouble Ticket Interface Definition panel appears.

3. Enter **CUSTOM** in the Interface Type field, and press F6 (Action).

The Custom Trouble Ticket panel appears.

4. Complete the following fields:

#### **Procedure Name**

Specifies the name of your NCL procedure for delivering tickets.

**Important!** The NCL procedure must be in the COMMANDS concatenation for your region. To list the concatenation, enter **/ALLOC**.

#### **Enter Parameters Below**

Specifies any parameters that you want the NCL procedure to receive. Press F1 (Help) for information about variables.

#### **Example: Define a Custom Trouble Ticket Interface**

This example shows an interface that uses the distributed CA SOLVE:Central exit, \$RMPB06S, to send tickets to a CA SOLVE:Central region with the ACB name SOLVPROB and other required values.

## **Example: Invoke a REXX procedure**

This example shows how you can use the NCL procedure to execute a REXX procedure.

The NCL statement that executes a REXX procedure in your environment has the following format:

REXX rexx\_procedure parm\_1 ... parm\_n

## **Define a CA Service Desk Trouble Ticket Interface**

The <u>CA Service Desk integration</u> (see page 231) feature must be implemented before you can send alert trouble tickets to it; otherwise, all alert forwarding requests fail.

**Note:** For more information, see the *CA Common Services for z/OS Service Desk Integration Guide*.

## To define a CA Service Desk trouble ticket interface

1. Enter /ALADMIN at the prompt.

The Alert Monitor: Administration Menu appears.

2. Select option I - Define Trouble Ticket Interface.

The Alert Monitor: Trouble Ticket Interface Definition panel appears.

3. Enter **SERVICEDESK** in the Interface Type field, and press F6 (Action).

The Service Desk Trouble Ticket Setup panel appears.

## 4. Complete the following fields:

## **CA Service Desk Server Web Services HTTP URL**

Specifies the HTTP URL of the web services definitions on the target CA Service Desk server.

**Default:** If left blank, the CA Common Services CAISDI/soap component chooses the default server.

**Note:** This URL points to the web services definitions that CAISDI/soap invokes to create the requests. This is not the same as the URL that is used to log on to CA Service Desk. Contact your CA Service Desk administrator for the URL.

## **CCI Sysid**

Specifies the CCI system ID of the LPAR where the CAISDI/soap task is active. This is the SYSID name specified in the CAICCI startup JCL.

**Default:** If left blank, the local CAICCI on this LPAR locates a suitable CAISDI/soap task.

## **Request Description Format**

Specifies whether the USD Request Description field is produced with HTML formatting or in plain text (TEXT).

Default: HTML

**Note:** In most cases, leaving the CA Service Desk Server Web Services HTTP URL and CCI Sysid fields blank will suffice. This lets the CAISDI/soap component use its default values.

Press F3 (File)

The definition is saved.

## Set Up the Trouble Ticket Data Entry Definition

If you want the operator to supply information when creating a trouble ticket, you need to set up the ticket data entry definition.

#### To set up the trouble ticket data entry definition

1. Enter /ALADMIN at the prompt.

The Alert Monitor: Administration Menu appears.

2. Select option **D** - Define Trouble Ticket Data Entry.

The Trouble Ticket Data Entry Definition panel appears.

3. In the free-format data entry section of the panel, enter the data entry definition for the panel that the operator will use when creating a ticket.

You can create multiple field names by replicating the key variables linked by default.

Note: For more information about completing this section, press F1 (Help).

## **Example: Data Entry Definition to Prompt Operators for Email Address**

The following example shows a definition that prompts the operator to identify the receiver of the ticket.

## **Considerations**

To make the panel more user-friendly, you can change this panel by creating a trouble ticket data entry definition.

## **Example: Data Entry Definition**

Here is an example of the data entry definition.

## Implement Trouble Ticket Interface for Multiple Email Addressees

You can use an exit procedure, together with the trouble ticket interface and data entry definitions, to implement an interface that prompts operators for more than one email address.

## To implement a trouble ticket interface for multiple email addressees

 Create an NCL procedure with the following statements, and save it to your TESTEXEC:

```
&IF .&$USRNAME1 NE . &THEN + &$AMTADDRESS1 = &$USRNAME1 &IF .&$USRNAME2 NE . &THEN + &$AMTADDRESS2 = &$USRNAME2
```

**Note:** The number of &IF statements sets up the number of addresses you want to provide.

 Update the trouble ticket data entry definition (see page 220) with the following fields:

```
FIELD NAME=$USRNAME1
VALUE="&$AMTADDRESS1"
DESC="EMAIL ADDRESS #1"
COMMENT=""
REQUIRED=NO
LENGTH=40
FIELD NAME=$USRNAME2
VALUE=""
DESC="EMAIL ADDRESS #2"
COMMENT=""
REQUIRED=NO
LENGTH=40
...
```

#### Notes:

- The number of fields corresponds to the number of email addresses in the procedure you created.
- The value &\$AMTADDRESS1 must be specified.
- Define the email trouble ticket interface (see page 215) specifying a default address in the Mail Address field and the name of the procedure in the Exit Procedure Name field.

The trouble ticket interface prompts operators for email addresses when they enter TT next to an alert.

## **Example: Implement a Trouble Ticket Interface for Two Email Addresses**

## To create an NCL procedure named EXAMPLE that sends emails to two addresses

 Create an NCL procedure named EXAMPLE with the following statements, and save it to the TESTEXEC:

```
&IF .&$USRNAME1 NE . &THEN + &$AMTADDRESS1 = &$USRNAME1 
&IF .&$USRNAME2 NE . &THEN + &$AMTADDRESS2 = &$USRNAME2
```

- 2. Enter /ALADMIN at the prompt.
- 3. Select option **D** Define Trouble Ticket Data Entry.
- 4. Complete the panel as follows:

```
PROD------ Alert Monitor: Trouble Ticket Data Entry Definition -----
                                Function=Update Scroll ==> CSR
Command ===>
000001 FIELD NAME=$USRNAME1
000002 VALUE="&$AMTADDRESS1"
000003 DESC="EMAIL ADDRESS#1"
000004 COMMENT=""
000005 REQUIRED=NO
000006 LENGTH=40
000007 FIELD NAME=$USRNAME2
000008 VALUE=""
000009 DESC="EMAIL ADDRESS #2"
000010 COMMENT=""
000011 REQUIRED=NO
000012 LENGTH=40
```

- 5. Enter **/ALTTI** at the prompt.
- 6. Enter **EMAIL** in the Interface Type field and press F6 (Action).
- 7. Complete the panel as follows:

```
PROD----- Alert Monitor : Email A Trouble Ticket -Columns 00001 00072
                                    Function=Update Scroll ⇒ CSR
Command ===>
Mail Address
                    defaultaddress@tt.com_
Host Name
           (IBM)
                    HOSTNAME
SMTP Node Name (IBM)
                    NODENAME
SMTP Job Name (IBM)
                    SMTP
SMTP DEST Id (TCPaccess)
                    EXAMPLE
Exit Procedure Name
                    &$AMDESC
Subject
                      Enter Mail Text Below
```

#### Result

When an operator enters **TT** next to an alert, they are prompted for an email address as follows:

## **Define Alert Monitor Filters**

You can filter the alerts displayed on the Alert Monitor by applying a set of criteria to each of the fields in the alert. The filters that you create can be named and stored for later use, using the FILTER command.

## To define an Alert Monitor filter

1. Enter /ALFILT at the prompt.

The Alert Monitor: Filter Definition List panel appears.

2. Press F4 (Add).

The Alert Filter panel appears.

3. Complete the following fields:

#### Name

Specifies the name of the filter.

## Description

Describes the filter.

## **Filter Expression**

Specifies the Boolean expression that determines what alerts are passed by the filter. For more information about creating Boolean expressions, press F1 (Help).

Press F3 (File)

The Alert Monitor filter is saved.

# **Alert Monitor Display Format**

The Alert Monitor display format determines the information displayed for the alerts on the Alert Monitor, for example, the columns and the order in which they appear.

You specify the Alert Monitor display format on the List Format panel.

For each type of information you want to display on the Alert Monitor, you need to specify two items: a static heading and a variable that contains the required information.

You can create a multiscreen Alert Monitor display with up to 10 screens, enabling you to display more information on the monitor. The screens can be accessed by pressing the F11 (Right) or F10 (Left) function keys from the monitor.

The variable contains the information you want to display. The name of a variable can sometimes be longer than the data to display. You can enter a shorter name and then make that shorter name an alias of the actual name.

## **Create the Alert Monitor Display Format**

You can create format definitions that can be used to customize the information displayed on the Alert Monitor.

## To create the Alert Monitor display format

1. Enter /ALADMIN.L at the prompt.

The List Definition List appears.

2. Enter **C** beside the DEFAULT display format definition.

A copy of the List Description panel appears.

3. Enter a new value in the List Name field to identify the new definition, and update the Description and Title fields.

Press F8 (Forward) three times.

The List Format panel appears.

4. Enter column headings and variables using the text editor to specify the information to display on the Alert Monitor.

**Note:** For more information about the text editor, press F1 (Help).

- 5. (Optional) Press F5 (Fields) to create aliases.
- 6. Press F3 (File).

The details are saved.

# **Enable Alerts from External Applications**

You can generate alerts (to view on the Alert Monitor) from external applications such as CA OPS/MVS.

Note: To use this feature, the SOLVE SSI must be active.

## Follow these steps:

1. Enter /PARMS at the prompt.

The Parameter Groups list appears.

2. Enter **U** next to the \$NM ALERTS parameter group in the Interfaces category.

The ALERTS - Alert Monitor Interface panel appears.

- 3. Enter YES in the Enable External Alerts? field.
- 4. Press F6 (Action).

The changes are activated immediately.

5. Press F3 (File).

The settings are saved.

# **Alert Forwarding**

Alerts are displayed on the Alert Monitor; however, you can also forward them to the following platforms:

- EM Console in CA NSM
- UNIX platforms as SNMP traps
- CA NetMaster NM for SNA or Tivoli NetView (TME10) systems, as generic alert NMVTs
- CA Service Desk servers (see page 231), as CA Service Desk requests or incidents

You can apply filter criteria to forward different types of alerts to different platforms.

Alert forwarding does not require manual intervention; it occurs automatically when the alert is created.

## **Implement Alert Forwarding**

You implement alert forwarding by using Customizer parameter groups.

**Note:** TNGTRAP and SERVICEDESK do not have clear alert events. Only alert open and considerations are forwarded.

## To implement alert forwarding

1. Enter /PARMS at the prompt.

The Customizer: Parameter Groups list appears.

2. Enter **U** in front of the ALERTS parameter group in the Interfaces category.

The parameter group opens for update.

3. Complete the following field:

#### **Dest Type**

Specifies the type of alert forwarding to use.

Press Enter.

The fields dynamically change to match the specified destination type.

4. Review the fields, and update as required.

(Optional) Press F8 (Forward), and repeat Step 3 for each Definition ID.

Note: Press F1 (Help) for information about the fields.

5. Press F6 (Action).

The changes are applied.

6. Press F3 (File).

The settings are saved.

# **SNMP Trap Definition**

The MIB definition for alerts forwarded as SNMP traps is provided in member \$AMTRAP, supplied in the CC2DSAMP data set. You can download this member to your UNIX system and compile it.

**Note:** When copying this member to your UNIX system, you can rename it to avoid problems on some UNIX systems where the \$ sign has special meaning.

The supplied MIB defines two traps with the following object identifiers:

- \$AMTRAP = 1.3.6.1.4.1.1126.1.2.1.2 (for an alert)
- \$AMTRAPC = 1.3.6.1.4.1.1126.1.2.1.3 (when an alert is cleared)

## Forward to Tivoli NetView

To receive alerts in a Tivoli NetView region, the CNMCALRT task must be defined and active. The alerts are formatted as Operator Notification generic alerts.

## To forward alerts to Tivoli NetView

- 1. Check the DSIDMN (or DSIDMNB) member in the DSIPARM PDS. DSIPARM.PDS is allocated by the Tivoli NetView started task.
- 2. Ensure that the CNMCALRT task is included and is initialized (INIT=Y). For example:

TASK MOD=CNMCALRT,TSKID=CNMCALRT,PRI=6,INIT=Y

**Note:** This statement is necessary for the z/OS software alert forwarding function.

## Forward to CA NSM

To format the traps sent to a CA NSM management platform, you must load the rules to reformat the alert messages for display on the EM Console.

#### To forward alerts to the EM Console in CA NSM

 Use FTP to download the message definition rules in binary mode from the UNIEMMSG member of your CC2DSAMP data set created at installation. For example, using the Windows FTP client from the prompt:

```
>ftp myhost
Connected to myhost.mycompany.com.
User (myhost.mycompany.com:(none)): user01
331 Send password please.
Password: xxxxxxxx
230 USER01 is logged on. Working directory is "/u/users/user01".
ftp>cd "prefix.ppvv.CC2DSAMP"
250 The working directory "prefix.ppvv.CC2DSAMP" is a partitioned data set
ftp>binary
200 Representation type is Image
ftp> get uniemmsg uniemmsg.txt
200 Port request OK.
125 Sending data set prefix.ppvv.CC2DSAMP(UNIEMMSG) FIXrecfm 80
250 Transfer completed successfully.
ftp: 3200 bytes received in 0.67Seconds 4.77Kbytes/sec.
ftp>quit
```

2. From a Windows prompt on the destination CA NSM EM Server, load the message definition rules from the downloaded file. Enter the following command at the prompt to define the rules to event management:

```
cautil -f "uniemmsg.txt"
```

3. Enter the following command to load the rules:

```
oprcmd opreload
```

4. In your region, set the alert forwarding destination to TNGTRAP.

# Alert Forwarding to CA Service Desk

Before you can forward alert details to CA Service Desk to create requests, you implement CA Service Desk Integration.

**Note:** For more information, see the *CA Common Services for z/OS Service Desk Integration Guide.* 

Do not forward any alerts to CA Service Desk until integration is completely and correctly implemented; otherwise, all alert forwarding requests to CA Service Desk fail.

# **Suppress State Change Alerts**

The region automatically generates an alert for a resource that changes state. You can suppress the alerts for selected state changes. You can also specify the severity levels of the generated state change alerts.

## To suppress automatically generated state change alerts

1. Enter the **/PARMS** panel shortcut.

The Parameter Groups panel appears.

2. Enter F STATECHANGE.

The cursor locates the STATECHANGE parameter group.

3. Enter **U** beside the group.

The group opens for updating.

4. Blank out the fields for the states you want to suppress alerting. For example, if you want to suppress alerting for state changes to UNKNOWN, blank out the Unknown field.

Press F6 (Action).

The region stops generating alerts for those state changes.

5. Press F3 (File).

The group is updated with the changes.

## **State Change Alerts**

State change alerts are based on RMAM001xx messages. These messages are defined in CAS, and you can customize them.

You can maintain messages from the Message Definition List panel. The shortcut to the panel is /CASMSG.

**Note:** For information about how to maintain messages, see the *Managed Object Development Services Guide*.

# **CA Service Desk Integration**

The CA Service Desk Integration feature creates CA Service Desk requests from forwarded alerts and alert trouble tickets, or both.

You can define multiple forwarding destinations to CA Service Desk, with each one pointing to a different CA Service Desk server.

**Note:** If your CA Service Desk installation is configured with the optional ITIL application, incidents are created instead of requests.

Many CA Technologies mainframe products use this feature to consolidate their problem notification on a specified CA Service Desk server. The feature uses W3C SOAP (Simple Object Access Protocol) to invoke web services provided by CA Service Desk.

## **Software Requirements**

CA Service Desk Integration has the following software requirements:

- CA Service Desk r11 or r11.1
- CA Common Services for z/OS r11, specifically the CAICCI and CAISDI/soap components

## **How Requests Are Created**

To create a CA Service Desk request from an alert, the following internal steps are performed:

- The CA Common Services for z/OS CAICCI component is used to pass the request to the CA Common Services for z/OSCAISDI soap component. CAISDI/soap is a z/OS-hosted SOAP client.
- 2. CAISDI/soap sets up an IP connection with the CA Service Desk server, then uses HTTP/HTTPS requests to invoke the necessary web services on the CA Service Desk server to create the new request or incident.
- 3. The request or incident number is returned and annotated in the alert.

## **Request Assignment**

By default, CA Service Desk requests created by your region appear as *assigned* requests, with an assignee and an end user of System NetMaster User.

Your CA Service Desk administrator can customize the product templates to change these assignments to suit your organization.

## **Request Updating**

A CA Service Desk request created from an alert is static. It reflects the alert details that were current at the time it was created.

**Note:** A CA Service Desk request is not subsequently updated with any changes to the alert, nor closed when the corresponding alert is closed.

Requests are intended for initial problem notification to a wider and more general data center audience. CA Service Desk Integration complements the functions of the Alert Monitor; it does not replace the Alert Monitor.

Every request (if HTML format is used) contains hyperlinks to various WebCenter pages, including the Alert Monitor. You should use the Alert Monitor for real-time dynamic alerting functions.

For recurring alerts, a request is created for the first occurrence only.

## Other Ways to Create Requests or Incidents

In addition to Alert Monitor forwarding and trouble tickets, CA Service Desk requests or incidents can also be created from the following functions:

- Operator Console Services (OCS)
- MVS console

## **Operator Console Services**

The OCS command SDCREATE can be used to create a CA Service Desk request from the OCS command line, for example:

SDCREATE Problem xxx has occurred

This attempts to open a request on the default CA Service Desk server. The request will have a severity of 4, and a summary and description of *Problem xxx has occurred*. Like other requests raised, it is assigned to System\_NetMaster\_User.

Use the SDTEST command to check if a default server is implemented.

## **MVS Console**

As with any product command, you can also issue SDCREATE from the MVS system console, for example:

F rname, SDCREATE Problem xxx has occurred

## **Request Description Format**

By default, your region generates CA Service Desk request description content in HTML format.

By default, CA Service Desk does not render embedded HTML directives in the request description field. To support this, you must customize your CA Service Desk server. This task involves customizing the detail\_cr.htmpl form to add keeptags and keeplinks support.

**Note:** For more information, see the *Service Desk Modification Guide*.

# **Implement the Alert History Function**

The Alert Monitor retains data in an alert history file. You can define the time period that alerts are retained.

#### To specify the time period that alerts are retained

1. Enter /PARMS at the prompt.

The Customizer: Parameter Groups list appears.

2. Enter **U** in front of the \$NM ALERTHIST parameter group in the Files category.

The ALERTHIST - Alert History File Specification panel appears.

3. Complete the following fields:

## **Days to Retain Alerts**

Specifies the number of days that you want to retain alerts in the history file.

Limits: 999 days

Default: 7 days

## Time of Day for Alert Purge

Specifies the time of day (in the format hh.mm) at which alerts older than the value in the Days to Retain Alerts field are deleted from the history file.

Press F6 (Action).

The changes are applied.

4. Press F3 (File).

The settings are saved.

## **Reorganize Files and Monitor Space Usage**

Over time, the alert history file can become fragmented. You can reorganize the file to improve its efficiency.

## To reorganize the Alert History database for optimum space usage

- 1. Copy (REPRO) the alert history file to a backup file.
- 2. Delete and redefine the original file.

Use the same attributes that were used when the file was defined at region setup. See the generated SO1LCALC member in your INSTALL.JCL data set; this member has the original VSAM definition JCL for the file.

Monitor the amount of disk space used by the data set to estimate the optimal file size and optimal frequency of reorganization.

## **Example: Back Up Alert History File**

This example backs up an alert history file.

The sequential backup file has the following format:

DSORG=PS, RECFM=VB, LRECL=32756, BLKSIZE=32760

## **Extract Alert Data for Reporting**

You can extract alert data from the Alert History database in a character separated values (CSV) format for processing by external reporting and analysis tools. The default field separator character is comma (,). You can change it in the ALERTHIST parameter group.

## To extract alert data for reporting and analysis

- 1. Allocate a sequential data set with the following attributes:
  - LRECL is greater than or equal to 300 bytes.
  - RECFM is VB.
- 2. Enter /ALHIST.

The History Menu appears.

3. Type **EX** at the prompt, and specify the data set name that you have allocated in the Extract DSN field.

(Optional) If you want to limit the extracted data, select an <u>Alert Monitor filter</u> (see page 224) through the Filter Name field.

Press Enter.

The data is extracted to the specified data set.

4. Transfer the data set to your personal computer (PC) in ASCII format, and save it with an appropriate extension. (For example, if you plan to use Microsoft Excel to process the data, use the .csv extension.)

The extracted data is saved in a text file.

5. Open the text file by using your preferred PC application.

The extracted data is presented in your preferred format for analysis.

6. Analyze your data by applying facilities such as graphs and charts, tables, and macros.

# Chapter 21: Implementing Status Monitor Filters

This section contains the following topics:

Implement the Status Monitor Filters (see page 237)

Access Status Monitor Filter Definitions (see page 237)

Add a Status Monitor Filter (see page 238)

Maintenance of Status Monitor Filter Definitions (see page 241)

# **Implement the Status Monitor Filters**

You use filters to customize a Status Monitor panel. For example, you can define a filter that causes the Status Monitor to display only those resources that are applicable to a subset of your network.

A Status Monitor filter uses a Boolean expression, which you define on the Status Monitor Filter panel, to determine what to display on the monitor. You restrict the display by using the resource attributes such as names and status.

When you save a filter definition in the knowledge base, the definition propagates automatically to all the connected regions—that is, the definition is global.

# **Access Status Monitor Filter Definitions**

Status Monitor filters let you configure your view of monitored resources to suit your requirements. You can selectively view different groups of resources by swapping filters.

To access Status Monitor filter definitions, enter /ASADMIN.F at the prompt.

The Status Monitor Filter List appears.

The panel displays the list of filter definitions in the knowledge base. You can add a new definition, or browse, update, copy or delete an existing definition.

# Add a Status Monitor Filter

## To add a Status Monitor filter definition

- 1. Access the Status Monitor Filter List.
- 2. Press F4 (Add).

The Status Monitor Filter panel appears.

**Note:** If you change your mind and do not want to add the filter, press F12 (Cancel) to cancel the operation any time before Step 5.

3. Complete the Name and Description fields in the Filter Definition window to identify the new filter.

Note: Press F1 (Help) for a description of the fields.

- 4. <u>Specify a Boolean expression</u> (see page 240) in the Filter Expression window to define the filter.
- 5. Press F3 (File).

The new definition is saved.

## **Status Monitor Filter Panel**

The Status Monitor Filter panel specifies the details of a Status Monitor filter. The operation you are performing is displayed at the top right of the panel, for example, Function=UPDATE.

The panel displays two windows. The Filter Definition window identifies the filter by name and description, and the Filter Expression window specifies the Boolean expression that defines the filter.

#### **Example: Status Monitor Filter Panel**

```
PROD------ Automation Services : Status Monitor Filter ------Function=UPDATE
Command ===>
+ Filter Definition ------+
| Name ..... ATTENTION
 Description .. RESOURCES THAT ARE IN ATTENTION STATE
Last Updated at 22.09.04 on WED 24-MAY-2006 by USER01
+ Filter Expression ------
                                         D=Delete I=Insert R=Repeat
     "(" Field Opr Value
                                                    Gen ")" Bool
        LOGSTAT = "ATTENTION"
     **FND**
  F1=Help
            F2=Split
                      F3=File
                                F4=Save
  F7=Bkwd
            F8=Forward F9=Swap
                                                   F12=Cancel
```

## **Status Monitor Views**

A view customizes your Status Monitor for the specific purpose of monitoring certain classes of objects. Each view has associated with it a selected set of filters and display formats.

To see the supported views, enter? in a View field.

## **How You Define the Status Monitor Filter Expression**

Use the Filter Expression window on the Status Monitor Filter panel to specify the Boolean expression that defines the filter. The expression uses resource attributes as criteria to determine what to display on the Status Monitor.

To display the list of valid values for a field, enter a question mark (?) in the field.

Use the following action codes to help you enter the expression:

D

Deletes the selected line.

ı

Inserts a blank line after the selected line.

R

Repeats a selected line.

## **Example: Define a Status Monitor Filter**

This example defines a filter named RSCALERT that enables an operator to monitor resources that have a DEGRADED, FAILED, or UNKNOWN logical state. The following panel shows the completed filter.

```
PROD------ Automation Services : Status Monitor Filter -----Function=BROWSE
Command ===>
                                                           Scroll ===> CSR
 Filter Definition -----
 Name ..... RCSALERT
 Description .. Resources in DEGRADED, FAILED, or UNKNOWN state
 Last Updated at 15.09.30 on WED 24-MAY-2006 by USER01
 Filter Expression ------
                                                            Gen ")" Bool
      "(" Field Opr Value
         LOGSTAT = "DEGRADED"
LOGSTAT = "FAILED"
                                                                   OR
                                                                    0R
          LOGSTAT = "UNKNOWN"
     **END**
               F2=Split
                                                                F6=Refres
  F1=Help
                           F3=Exit
                                       F4=Edit
                                                   F5=Find
  F7=Backward F8=Forward F9=Swap
                                                               F12=Max
```

The filter expression causes a Status Monitor to display only services that have the DEGRADED, FAILED, or UNKNOWN logical state.

# **Maintenance of Status Monitor Filter Definitions**

You can browse, update, copy, and delete filter definitions from the Status Monitor Filter List panel.

If the Filter Expression window does not fully display the Boolean expression while you are browsing a definition, press F12 (Max) to expand the window.

**Note:** After you update a filter definition, an operator who is already using that filter does not see the update. To use the updated filter, the operator must enter the REFILTER command.

# Chapter 22: Implementing Resource Templates

This section contains the following topics:

Resource Templates (see page 243)

USRCLS Class Template (see page 243)

Set Up Your Template System (see page 244)

Associate a Template to a Resource Class (see page 245)

Resource Template Definitions (see page 245)

Maintenance of Resource Template Definitions (see page 246)

<u>Availability Maps in a Template System Image</u> (see page 247)

Define and Maintain Processes in a Template System Image (see page 248)

Convert a Resource Definition into a Resource Template (see page 249)

# **Resource Templates**

**Important!** The supplied INTNL class resource templates are required for the region to function properly. Do not modify these templates.

After you have defined a system image, you can define resources in it. Your product includes sample resource templates, which you can use to define commonly used resources. The templates supply values for certain resource definition fields, and simplify the task of creating your own specific resource definitions. You can modify the sample templates or create your own templates. You can create templates for the different resource types in each class of resource.

You can maintain several versions of templates as different \$TEMPLAT system images. Each version can contain, in addition to the resource templates, the availability maps and processes used by resource templates.

# **USRCLS Class Template**

No sample USRCLS class templates are supplied. However, you can create your own templates to facilitate the definition of similar resources. The templates provide the methods for operating USRCLS class resources (if supported by your product).

# **Set Up Your Template System**

Templates are defined in a \$TEMPLAT system image. Your template system may contain different versions of templates. Group each version in a different \$TEMPLAT system image.

Before you work on templates, copy the supplied templates to a different \$TEMPLAT version. Start with version 0010; versions 0001 through 0009 are reserved for software updates.

## To copy a \$TEMPLAT system image

- 1. Enter /RADMIN.T.I at the prompt.
  - The Template System Image List panel appears.
- 2. Enter **C** beside the system image you want to copy.
  - The System Image Definition panel opens.
- 3. Change the value in the Database Version field to uniquely identify the new copy (for example, 0010), and update the description fields as required.
- 4. Press F3 (File).
  - The System Image Copy panel appears advising you of the status of the copying process. When the copying process is complete, the System Image List panel appears.
- 5. Set up one \$TEMPLAT system image version for general use. Review the templates to ensure that they are suitable for the resources on your system. The version to use is set in the OPSYSIDS parameter group under the NAMES category during region initialization. Enter the **/PARMS** shortcut to access the Customizer: Parameter Groups panel that enables you to access the parameter for update.

# **\$TEMPLAT System Image for Multiple Products**

Each product supplies its own templates for the supported resource classes. If you want to run different products in the same region, merge the \$TEMPLAT system images that contain those templates.

**Note:** For information about how to merge system images, see the *Reference Guide*.

# **Associate a Template to a Resource Class**

#### To associate a template to a resource class

1. Enter /RADMIN.T.R at the prompt.

The Resource Template Definition List appears.

2. Enter **S** next to the resource class to which you want to associate the template.

A list of templates associated with the resource class appears.

3. Enter AP in front of the template.

The Automation Services : Apply Template panel appears.

4. Define how you want to apply the template and press F6 (Action).

The ResourceView: System Image List appears.

5. Select the system image to which you want to apply the template.

The Automation Services: Messages List panel appears with details of the process.

6. Press F3 (File).

All resources on the selected images that are associated with the template are updated.

# **Resource Template Definitions**

**Note:** The name of a template must contain alphanumeric, @, #, \$, .,  $\cdot$ , -, (, and ) characters only. It must not be a number.

The panels used to add a resource template definition for a particular resource class are the same as the panels that you use when you add a resource definition for that class. You can define any information that will be used generically by a specific resource.

## **Variables**

You can use a variable to supply the value for a field in the resource template definition.

## Disable Substitution of Variables

Variables in a template are substituted by their values when you apply the template to a resource definition. You can disable variable substitution—that is, you want the variable to appear in the resource definition, *not* the value of the variable.

To disable the substitution of a variable during application, replace the ampersand (&) in front of the variable name by the underline character ( ).

For example, if you specify \_ZMSGTEXT in a template and apply the template to a resource definition, \_ZMSGTEXT becomes &ZMSGTEXT in the resource definition.

## Specify a Variable to Represent a Left-justified Fixed-length Field

Some messages contain left-justified fixed-length fields for resource names. If the name is not of the maximum length, the name is left justified. You cannot use normal variables because they do not provide padding.

To handle left-justified fixed-length fields, use less-than signs (<).

Each < represents one character. For example, <<<< represents a five-character field with left justification.

## Specify a Variable to Represent a Right-justified Fixed-length Field

Some messages contain right-justified fixed-length fields for resource names. If the name is not of the maximum length, the name is right justified. You cannot use normal variables because they do not provide padding.

To handle right-justified fixed-length fields, use greater-than signs (>).

Each > represents one character. For example, >>>> represents a five-character field with right justification.

# **Maintenance of Resource Template Definitions**

You can browse, update, copy, and delete resource template definitions. You can copy a resource template definition between or in \$TEMPLAT system images.

## **Apply Updated Templates**

You may have defined a number of resources by using a template and that template has since been updated. You can use the AP action code to reapply the template to update those resource definitions.

## To apply updated templates

- 1. From the templates list, enter AP beside a template.
  - The Apply Template panel appears.
- 2. Specify how the updates are performed.
- 3. Press F6 (Action).
  - A list of system images appears.
- 4. Enter **S** beside the system images that contain the resource definitions that you want to update and then press Enter to apply the template to the included definitions.

# Availability Maps in a Template System Image

You can define availability maps in a \$TEMPLAT system image. You can then use these maps with resources built from the templates.

The procedures for creating and maintaining maps for resource templates are similar to the procedures for creating and maintaining maps for resource definitions.

# Access Map Definitions in a Template System Image

## To access the map definitions in a \$TEMPLAT system image

- 1. Enter /RADMIN.T at the prompt.
  - The Template Definition Menu appears.
- 2. Enter **A** at the prompt.
- 3. (Optional) If you want to use a different version of the \$TEMPLAT system image, change the value in the Template Version field and then press Enter.
  - The relevant map list panel appears. The panel lists all the maps in the selected \$TEMPLAT system image.

# Define and Maintain Processes in a Template System Image

You can use the processes in a \$TEMPLAT system image in a resource template belonging to the same image. You can create new processes or change existing processes.

The procedures for creating and maintaining processes for resource templates are similar to the procedures for <u>creating and maintaining processes for resource definitions</u> (see page 263).

## Access the Process Definitions in a Template System Image

## To access the processes in a \$TEMPLAT system image

- 1. Enter /RADMIN.T at the prompt.
  - The Template Definition Menu appears.
- 2. Enter **P** at the prompt and, if you want to use a different version of the \$TEMPLAT system image, change the value in the Version field.
  - The Process List panel appears. The panel lists the processes in the selected \$TEMPLAT system image.

# Convert a Resource Definition into a Resource Template

You can convert a resource definition into a resource template to facilitate future definition of similar resources. After you are satisfied that a resource definition is working correctly, you can convert the definition into a template.

#### To convert a resource definition into a resource template

- 1. Use the Copy action to create another copy of the definition.
- 2. Change the system name on the General Description panel to \$TEMPLAT, and specify the version of the \$TEMPLAT image into which you want to copy the definition in the Database Version field.
- 3. Name the template on the General Description panel.
- 4. Replace the resource names on the other definition panels by *one* of the following:
  - &ZRMDBNAME if the name field is not of fixed length
  - Less-than signs (<) if the name field is of fixed length with left justification—this
    typically occurs in the message text</li>
  - Greater-than signs (>) if the name field is of fixed length with right justification—this typically occurs in the message text

**Note:** Keeping the name length to less than the maximum number of characters enables you to easily recognize the fixed length name fields in a message. For example, a seven-character name is displayed with an extra space in an eight-character fixed length field.

- 5. Replace the ampersand (&) in front of a variable by the underline character (\_).
- 6. File the definition. Any associated availability map and processes are also copied if they do not exist already in the specified \$TEMPLAT system image.

# **Chapter 23: Implementing Print Services**

This section contains the following topics:

Print Services Manager (see page 251)

Access PSM (see page 252)

Add a Printer Definition (see page 253)

**List Printer Definitions** (see page 253)

Add a Form Definition (see page 253)

**List Form Definitions** (see page 254)

Add Control Characters (see page 254)

List Control Characters (see page 254)

Add a Default Printer for a User ID (see page 255)

<u>List Default Printers</u> (see page 255)

Clear the Printer Spool (see page 256)

Exits to Send Print Requests to a Data Set (see page 256)

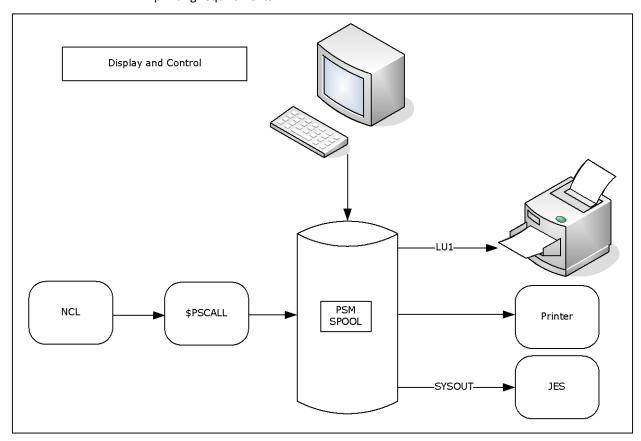
Print-to-Email (see page 261)

# **Print Services Manager**

Print Services Manager (PSM) allows you to specify the format of a print request and on which printer it is printed. Print requests can be viewed online before or after printing and can be redirected to files rather than printers.

PSM provides the following features, which can be customized to suit your requirements:

- Printer definition facilities
- Form definition maintenance
- Setup definition maintenance
- Default printer assignment maintenance
- Alias printer name definitions
- Banner page customization on output
- Spooled print request browsing, retention, and redirection to a different printer
- Integration with NCL-based components



The following illustration shows the different ways that PSM can be used to control printing requirements.

# **Access PSM**

The customizable functions of PSM are accessed from the PSM: Primary Menu.

To access PSM, enter **/PSM** at the prompt.

**Note:** You can also access PSM directly by invoking the \$PSCALL NCL procedure from OCS or an installation written NCL procedure. The PSM NCL interface is described in the *Network Control Language Reference Guide*.

## Add a Printer Definition

A printer definition defines where, how, and on what paper output is printed. A printer definition is required for each printer at which output is printed.

#### To add a printer definition

1. Enter /PSMPRTR at the prompt.

The PSM: Printer Definition List appears.

2. Press F4 (Add).

The PSM: Printer Definition panel appears.

3. Complete the fields, as required.

Note: For information about the fields, press F1 (Help).

4. Press F3 (File).

The definition is saved.

## **List Printer Definitions**

You can display a list of all the printer definitions defined for your region. This lets you browse and perform maintenance on the listed definitions.

To list all printer definitions, enter /PSMPRTR at the prompt.

## Add a Form Definition

A form definition is required for each type of paper on which output is printed. The Form Definition Menu is used to set up and administer these form definitions.

#### To add a form definition

1. Enter /PSMFORM at the prompt.

The PSM: Form Definition List appears.

2. Press F4 (Add).

The PSM: Form Definition panel appears.

3. Complete the fields and press F3 (File).

The form definition is saved.

Note: For information about the fields, press F1 (Help).

## **List Form Definitions**

You can list all of the form definitions defined for your region and then browse and perform maintenance on them.

To list all form definitions, enter **/PSMFORM** at the prompt.

## **Add Control Characters**

Control characters are sent to a printer before or after (or both) the output is printed. They are defined in setup definitions.

#### To add control characters

1. Enter /PSMSET at the prompt.

The PSM: Setup Definition List appears.

2. Press F4 (Add).

The PSM: Setup Definition panel appears. To access the second panel of the setup definition, press F8 (Forward).

Complete the fields, as required.

Note: For information about the fields, press F1 (Help).

3. Press F3 (File).

The setup definition is saved.

## **List Control Characters**

You can display a list of all the setup definitions defined for your region. This list lets you browse and perform maintenance on the listed definitions.

To list control characters, enter **/PSMSET** at the prompt.

## Add a Default Printer for a User ID

Each user ID in your region can be assigned a default printer. Default printer assignments let you define the printer to which output is sent whenever a user ID does not specify a printer.

#### To add a default printer for a user ID

1. Enter /PSMDFTP at the prompt.

The PSM: Default Printer Assignment List appears.

2. Press F4 (Add).

The PSM: Default Printer Assignment panel appears.

3. Complete the following fields:

#### **User ID**

Specifies the User ID of the user to whom the printer is assigned a default.

#### **Printer Name**

Specifies the name of the printer to which this user's printing is sent.

Press F3 (File).

The default printer assignment is saved.

## **List Default Printers**

You can display a list of all the default printer assignments defined for each user ID. This list lets you browse and perform maintenance on the listed definitions.

To list default printers, enter **/PSMDFTP** at the prompt.

## **Clear the Printer Spool**

Print requests are retained on the print spool if an error occurs during printing or if HELD is specified on the PSM: Print Request panel. The PSM clear spool panel is used to clear print requests from the print queue.

Note: This function is available to authorized users only.

#### To clear the print spool

1. Enter /PSMADMN at the prompt.

The PSM: Administration Menu appears.

2. Enter **CS** at the prompt.

The PSM: Clear Spool panel appears.

3. Complete the following field:

#### **Date**

Specifies that all print requests added to the spool before or on this date are deleted.

Press F6 (Action).

The print requests are deleted.

## **Exits to Send Print Requests to a Data Set**

Two printer exit procedures are distributed with your product. Each writes the output for a print request to a data set. The procedure \$PSDS81X can be customized to specific site requirements. The procedure \$PSDS81Z offers the same functionality with improved performance, but cannot be customized. The target data sets for both procedures can be sequential or partitioned.

Parameters that control the operation of the exit are defined in the Exit Data portion of the printer definition. Procedures that pass data to PSM for printing can override the exit data specified in the PSM printer definition.

The procedures use the parameters contained in the exit data to do the following:

- Determine the target data set
- Determine how to process a data line with a skip amount of zero
- Set the length of the lines print

## **How the Procedures Process a Print Request**

The procedures read each line of print data and write it directly to the nominated data set. Each print line is analyzed according to skip control before processing. This continues until all lines of data for the print request have been received from PSM and written to the nominated data set.

## **\$PSDS81X** and **\$PSDS81Z** Parameters

The \$PSDS81X and \$PSDS81Z exits have the following keyword parameters:

#### DSN=datasetname

Specifies the target data set name. If the data set is partitioned, the member name must be included or the data set is corrupted.

You can use the following symbolics in the *datasetname* parameter:

- &DAY is the day of the week (for example, MON).
- &YY is the two-digit representation of the year (for example, 11).
- &YYYY is the four-digit representation of the year (for example, 2011).
- &MM is the two-digit representation of the month (for example, 02).
- &MON is the three-character representation of the month (for example, JAN and FEB).
- &DD is the day of the month.
- &HHMMSS is the time.
- &HH is the hour.
- &MIN is the minute.
- &JOBID is the job ID.
- &JOBNAME is the job name.
- &NMID is the region ID.
- &NMDID is the region domain ID (DID).
- &GRPNAME is the sysplex name.
- &SYSID is the system ID.
- &SYSNAME is the system name.
- &USERID is the requesting user ID.

Symbolics are delimited by a period (.) or another symbolic (that is, &YY&MM. is the same as &YY.&MM.). Symbolics are also allowed in a member name.

#### Example:

DSN=NM.&SYSID..&USERID..D&YY&MM&DD..T&HHMMSS..DATA

For example, this specification can resolve to the following data set name:

DSN=NM.SYSA.MYUSER.D040915.T144505.DATA

#### DISP={ SHR | OLD | NEW | MOD }

Specifies the disposition of the output data set.

- SHR specifies shared use of the data set.
- OLD specifies exclusive use of the data set.
- NEW allocates a new data set.
- MOD appends the output in the file.

Default: SHR

#### LRECL= $\{n \mid \underline{80}\}$

Specifies the output record length.

Limits: 1 through 250

Default: 80

#### SKIP0={ NEWLINE | DISCARD | DESTRUCTIVE | NONDESTRUCTIVE }

Specifies how to process a data line with a skip amount of zero.

- NEWLINE creates a line of data.
- DISCARD discards the line of data.
- DESTRUCTIVE causes the data to replace the existing data line.
- NONDESTRUCTIVE overlays the data on the existing data line, but only where blanks were present on the existing data line. No existing non-blank characters are modified.

**Note:** The procedures ignore the following PSM print options: NEWPAGE and USCORE.

**Default: NEWLINE** 

The following additional parameters are applicable when DISP=NEW is specified:

#### CYL=pri,sec,dir

Specifies the primary and secondary space allocation values in cylinders. If a partitioned data set is used, the parameter specifies the number of directory blocks.

#### TRK=pri,sec,dir

Specifies the primary and secondary space allocation values in tracks. If a partitioned data set is used, the parameter specifies the number of directory blocks.

**Default:** TRK=15,5

#### **BLKSZ=blocksize**

Specifies the block size.

#### STORC=storclas

Specifies the storage class.

#### MGMTC=mgmtclas

Specifies the management class.

#### DATAC=dataclas

Specifies the data class.

#### VOL=volser

Specifies the volume serial number.

#### UNIT= { unit | SYSALLDA }

Specifies the unit.

Default: SYSALLDA if volser is specified

#### RECFM= { F | <u>FB</u> | V | VB }

Specifies the record format.

Default: FB

## **Printer Exit Definition Example**

This example directs the output for a PSM print request, assigned to the printer named DSEXIT, to the member TEST1 in the data set PROD.PSM.DATA. The record length of this data set is 80. Overlay lines in the data are removed.

```
PROD1----- PSM: Printer Definition -----
                                                         Function=BROWSE
Command ===>
 Printer Name ... DSEXIT
  Type ..... EXIT
                                  (JES, VTAM, ALIAS, EXIT)
 Description .... Print to a data set
 Lower Case? .... YES
                                  (Yes or No)
                                  (0 to 999999)
 Line Limit ..... 0
  Form Name ....+ FORMO
ALIAS Printer
 Real Name ....+
                                  (Real printer name)
JES Printer
                                  (destid.userid)
 Destination ....
                                  (A to Z, 0 to 9)
 Output Class ...
VTAM Printer
 LU Name .....
 Logmode .....
EXIT
 Exit Name ..... $PSDS81Z
 Exit Data ..... DSN=PROD.PSM.DATA(TEST1) LRECL=80
                 SKIP0=DISCARD
```

**Note:** Previous references to parameters WKVOL, CYL, and LIST in the exit data are no longer required. Remove them from the printer definition before using \$PSDS81Z or \$PSDS81X, or the print request fails.

## Print-to-Email

The \$PSEMAIL printer definition lets you email the output of a printing request. The request can be either an attachment or in the body of the email. When the output is sent as an attachment, the email uses the PS8803 message as its body and the PS8804 message as its salutation:

Data attached for email\_subject

Yours, user\_name

#### user\_name

Displays the sender name defined in UAMS.

You can maintain these messages from the Message Definition List panel. The shortcut to the panel is /CASMSG.

**Note:** For information about how to maintain messages, see the *Managed Object Development Services Guide*.

# **Chapter 24: Implementing Processes**

This section contains the following topics:

How to Implement Processes (see page 263)

Access Process Definitions (see page 266)

How to Define a Process (see page 266)

Generic Processes Using Resource Variables (see page 269)

Processes to Generate Alerts (see page 271)

How You Test a Process (see page 273)

How You Log Process Activities (see page 275)

Maintenance of Process Definitions (see page 275)

Back Up Global Processes (see page 276)

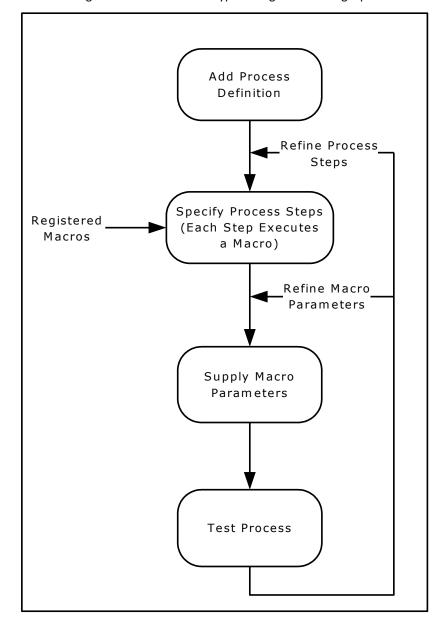
## **How to Implement Processes**

A process is a series of steps that can be executed in sequence to perform complex processing.

You define processes to automate complex operations tasks.

Processes can be executed as follows:

- From a resource definition—you can specify a process in a resource definition. The process is invoked when required for that resource.
- From an availability map—you can specify a process in an availability map (for example, to perform tasks at particular times).
- From an event rule—you can specify a process in an event rule. The process is invoked when an event triggers the rule.
- As a single task—you can run a process as a single, independent task. Use this feature to debug processes or as a quick way of executing a process manually.
- Interactively—you can run a process in the INTERACTIVE mode. Use this feature to check the results of processing single steps, or of processing a sequence of steps one at a time. You can display individual step logs and, if required, change the step parameters.



The following illustration shows the typical stages in defining a process.

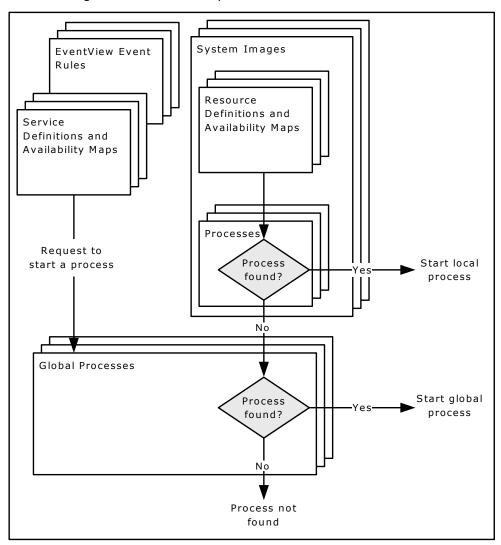
## **Process Types**

A process can be global (available to all components) or local (available to a specific system image only). A global process is available to all components; however, a local process is available only if it belongs to the local active image.

ServiceView and EventView components can use global processes only. ResourceView components can use both types of processes, according to the following rules:

- If a process is required and one exists in the local active system image, that process is used.
- If the required process does not exist in the active system image, the global process of the same name is used.

The following illustration shows how processes are searched for execution.



## **Access Process Definitions**

Each system image has its own set of processes and access to global processes belonging to the \$PROCESS 0001 system image.

#### To access the local process definitions in a system image

1. Enter /RADMIN.

The Resource Administration menu appears.

2. Type the option code **P**, and the name and version of the system image, and press Enter.

The Process List panel appears. This panel lists the processes in the system image and the global processes (displayed in blue on a color terminal).

#### To access the global process definitions

1. Enter /RADMIN.GP.

The Process List panel appears. This panel lists the global processes.

## How to Define a Process

From the Process List panel, press F4 (Add) to add a process definition. A Process Definition panel is displayed.

To define a process, first decide what you want the process to do, then break it down into steps, each step representing an action. Specify a macro for each step. A macro is an NCL procedure that performs the processing for that step. Authorized users can use the Register Macros option to register new macros.

Step processing can be conditional on the processing result of an earlier step. In the following example, STEP2 runs if STEP1 processing returns a code of 0. STEP3 runs if STEP1 processing returns a code greater than 0.

	Cond	litio	n
StepName STEP1	Step/RC STEP1	0pr	RC
STEP2	STEP1	=	0
STEP3	STEP1	>	0

When you define a process on the Process Definition panel, complete the following fields:

- Name and Description fields to identify the process
- StepName and Macro fields to define each step

If you want to find out what macros are available, enter? in a Macro field to display the list of available macros.

**Important!** \$NCL is the name of a special process definition. Do not use this name when you add process definitions.

Conditions are optional. Use relational operators in the Opr fields to set the conditions. Enter? in an Opr field to identify the valid relational operators.

You can repeat and delete steps, and insert blank lines.

Press F11 (Right) to display the parameters for each step.

The return code from a process is the return code from the last executed process step.

#### **Example: Issue Multiple System Commands**

The following shows an example of a process that issues multiple system commands.

```
PROD---------- Automation Services : Process Definition ------Function=Add
Command ===>
                                                        Scroll ===> PAGE
+ Process Definition ------+
 System Name .. PROD Version .. 0001 Last Updated By
 Name ...... TEST PROC
| Description .. ISSUE SYSTEM COMMANDS
+ Process Steps ------
                                      D=Delete I=Insert P=Parms R=Repeat
                   Condition
      StepName Step/RC Opr RC
                                 Macro
                                         Description
      STEP1
                                 SYSCMD EXECUTE A COMMAND
                \begin{array}{rcl} \mathsf{STEP1} & = & 0 \\ \mathsf{STEP2} & = & 0 \end{array}
      STEP2
                                 SYSCMD
                                         EXECUTE A COMMAND
                                 SYSCMD
      STEP3
                                         EXECUTE A COMMAND
      STEP4
                STEP1 = 99
                                 SYSCMD EXECUTE A COMMAND
  F1=Help
             F2=Split
                        F3=File
                                   F4=Save
  F7=Bkwd
             F8=Forward F9=Swap
                                             F11=Right F12=Cancel
```

If STEP1 completes successfully, STEP2 executes the next shutdown command. If STEP2 completes successfully, STEP3 issues the final shutdown command.

If STEP1 fails, STEP4 executes and issues a CANCEL command.

#### **Set Macro Parameters**

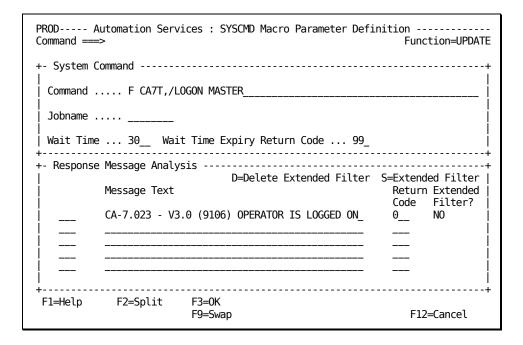
When you select a macro, it contains either no parameters or default parameters.

#### To set the parameters for a macro

- 1. Enter **P** next to the process step.
  - A Macro Parameter Definition panel appears.
- 2. Change the parameters as required and press F3 (OK). The parameters required by each macro depend on the purpose of the macro.

#### **Example: Set Macro Parameters**

The following shows the parameters set for Step 1 in the previous example.



The parameters include:

- The system command issued
- The text of the expected response
- A processing return code of 0
- A wait time of 30 seconds
- A time-out return code of 99

You can also specify an extended filter for the analysis of the response message text. For example, a response can contain variable information and you want to accept the message only if it contains specific values.

#### Variable as a Macro Parameter

You can use a variable to hold the value of a macro parameter. You pass the value of any variables required by a process as parameters when you specify the process, for example, in a resource definition.

**Important!** Do *not* specify variable names that start with #, \$, or Z.

#### **Example: Use a Variable as a Macro Parameter**

You have defined a process that contains the SYSCMD macro which issues the \$DU,&PRT command. When you use the process, you supply the value of the &PRT variable by specifying the following parameter: PRT=*printer-name*. Specify the name of the variable only (without the &).

## **Generic Processes Using Resource Variables**

You can define generic processes that perform functions that are dependent on how they are initiated by using resource variables. These variables contain information about a resource that is defined to the knowledge base. They are useful for building automated paging, standardized startup for CICS regions, and many other tasks where a uniform solution is required. Using a generic process reduces any overhead associated with building individual processes for individual resources.

**Note:** For information about knowledge base variables, see the *Reference Guide*.

#### **Example: Use Process to Page Support**

Service level agreements require that appropriate support personnel are pageable if any production CICS region is under stress. CA Automation Point is available at your site to monitor the condition and provide the paging function. Different CICS regions have different support personnel assigned.

You implement the following method in the CICS resource definitions:

- 1. Specify details of the support personnel.
- 2. Identify and specify the message to trigger automated paging.
- 3. Specify an event-related action for this message using the following generic process:

1		Cond	litio	n		ı
l i	StepName	Step/RC	0pr	RC	Macro Description	j
l i	S1	•			WTOR WTOR TO L1 SUPPORT	j
l i	S2	S1	EQ	32	WTOR TIMED OUT - CALL L2	j
l i	S10K	S1	EQ	0	SETSTATE L1 RESPONDED - SET EXT. DISPLA	Y į
l i	S20K	S2	EQ	0	SETSTATE L2 RESPONDED - SET EXT. DISPLA	Y į
l i	S3	S2	NE	0	GENALERT NO SUPPORT - RAISE ALERT	j
j	S4	S2	NE	0	SETSTATE NO SUPPORT - SET EXT. DISPLAY	j

- a. At Step S1, the resource sends a WTOR message, using knowledge base variables (for example, &ZRMDBREOPAG1 that contains the pager number) to provide details of the support personnel responsible for the failing resource.
  - CA Automation Point or by an operator intercepts the WTOR message, and the indicated first-level support person is paged. Response to the message indicates the success or failure of paging.
- b. If paging of the first-level person is successful, Step S1OK sets the extended display of the resource to indicate that the support person has acknowledged the paging.
  - If no reply is received within a specified period, Step S2 sends another WTOR message to invoke paging of the second-level support person.
- c. If paging of the second-level person is successful, Step S2OK sets the extended display of the resource to indicate that the support person has acknowledged the paging.
  - If paging fails, Step S3 raises an alert and Step S4 sets the extended display of the resource to indicate that no support personnel have responded.

## **Processes to Generate Alerts**

You can use a process in a ResourceView resource definition or an EventView message rule to generate alerts in response to problems occurring in a resource.

The GENALERT macro enables you to generate an alert from a process.

#### **Example: Generate Alert on Security Violation**

The DFHAC2003 message indicates that a CICS security violation has occurred. You may want to be warned of these violations. The following panels show the message rule definition that generates an alert under this condition by using the SECALERT process definition:

The following panels show the SECALERT process definition and the parameters used by the GENALERT macro:

```
SOLVPROD------ Automation Services : Process Definition ------Function=Browse
Command ===>
                                              Scroll ===> CSR
 Process Definition ------.
 System Name .. $PROCESS Version .. 0001 Last Updated By USER01
 Name ...... SECALERT At 16.21.13 On WED 24-JUL-1996
Description .. CICS security violation alert generator
 ------
. Process Steps -----
                                                   P=Parms
               Condition
     StepName Step/RC Opr RC
                           Macro
                                 Description
 Р
                           GENALERT GENERATE AN EVENTVIEW ALERT
    **END**
```

SOLVPROD EventView : Alert Attributes Function=BROWS	
. Alert Reference Key	.
. Alert Attributes	:
Severity 2   Type DEFAULT   Origin ALERTMACRO	     

SOLVPROD E- Command ===>	ventView : Alert De	efinitionFunction=BROWSE					
. Alert Description		:					
SECURITY VIOLATION HAS OCCURRED.							
. Alert Text							
ALERT IS TRIGGERED BY     &ZMSGTEXT	THE FOLLOWING MESSA	GE:					
		j					
. Alert Recommended Action   SEE THE PRECEDING DFHXS1111 MESSAGE IN THE CSCS LOG FOR FURTHER INFORMATION.							
; F1=Help F2=Split F7=Backward	F3=Exit F9=Swap	F11=Panels					

# **How You Test a Process**

After you have defined a process, you can test it by executing it as a single task or by executing it in the interactive mode.

## **Test a Process Interactively**

From the Process List panel, enter I beside a process to execute it in the interactive mode. The Process Definition panel for that process appears. You can:

- Enter **E** beside a step to execute only that step irrespective of the condition.
- Use F12 (Step) to execute a number of steps in sequence. Pressing F12 (Step)
  executes the next step in the sequence. The execution of each step depends on the
  condition specified for the step.
- Enter L beside an executed step to see the processing log. The log display is positioned at the latest entries relating to the selected step.
- Enter **P** beside a step to view the macro parameters.

#### To interactively edit and test the process steps

- 1. Press F4 (Edit) to access the Interactive Edit function to edit the process steps.
- 2. Modify the steps, as required.
- 3. When you complete the modifications, press F4 (OK) to return to the INTERACTIVE mode. You can also press F3 (File) to return to that mode. Pressing F3 (File) saves the modifications.
- 4. Test the modified process.
- 5. Press F3 (Exit) and F3 (File) again to save the modified steps. If the test is not satisfactory, restart from Step 1.

## Test a Process by Execution as a Single Task

#### To test a process by execution as a single task

1. From the Process List panel, enter **E** beside a process.

The task is executed as a single, independent task. The Optional Process Parameter Specification panel appears.

**Note:** When you use the E action code to execute a process, the process is executed under the BSYS background user ID.

2. Supply any parameters required by the process in the Parameters field, then press F6 (Action).

When the process has executed, a processing log appears. This log contains the processing results.

# **How You Log Process Activities**

Process activities are written to the activity log while you are testing a process. However, you can control the logging when a process is executed, for example, from a resource definition. Use the \$LOG process parameter to control the logging as follows:

#### \$LOG=BOTH

Logs activities in full and summary form.

#### \$LOG=FULL

Logs activities in full.

#### \$LOG=NO

(Default) Does not log activities.

#### \$LOG=SUMM

Logs activities in summary form only.

## **Maintenance of Process Definitions**

You can browse, update, copy, and delete process definitions from the Process List panel.

# **Back Up Global Processes**

To assist you with the maintenance of your global processes, you can create backup versions of your global process image. By creating a backup version of your global process image, you can perform the following:

- Update global process definitions in any version of a global process image.
- Restore a global process definition from a backup global process image.
- Merge two versions of a global process image.

#### To create a backup version of a global process image

1. Enter /ASADMIN.GPI at the prompt.

The Global Process Image List appears.

**Note:** If you have not created a backup before, there is only one global process image listed: \$PROCESS 0001. The active global process image can only be \$PROCESS 0001. \$PROCESS 0001 cannot be deleted.

2. Enter **C** beside the global process image you want to copy.

The Global Process Image Definition panel appears.

- 3. Enter a new Database Version, Short Description, and Long Description.
- 4. Press F3 (File).

The backup version of the global process image is saved. A copy in progress panel appears while the copy occurs. The Global Process Image List appears with the backup version displayed in the list.

If the global process image you have specified already exists, the Confirm System Image Merge panel appears.

## Update Global Process Definitions in a Backup Global Process Image

You can access a list of all the global process definitions in any version of a global process image. From this list you can update any global process definition contained in the global process image.

# To update a global process definition in the \$PROCESS 0002 backup image created above

1. Enter L (List Processes) beside the \$PROCESS 0002 global process image in the Global Process Image List.

The Global Process List panel appears showing all of the global process definitions in that global process image.

**Note:** You can access the list of global processes for another version of the global process image by changing the version number on the Global Process List panel and pressing Enter.

2. Enter **U** beside the global process definition that you want to update.

The Process Definition panel appears for that global process definition.

- 3. Update the global process definition, as required.
- 4. Press F3 (File).

The changes are saved and the Global Process List appears.

## Restore a Global Process Definition from a Backup Global Process Image

If you have made changes to a global process definition and you are having trouble with its implementation, you can restore it from a previous version of the definition.

#### To restore global process definition \$PROC01 from \$PROCESS 0002 to \$PROCESS 0001

- 1. Enter **C** beside \$PROC01 in the global process list.
  - The Process Definition panel appears.
- 2. Change the Database Version from 0002 to 0001 and press F3 (File).
  - The changes are saved. Because there is already a copy of the global process in the target global process image, the Confirm Copy Replace panel appears.
- 3. Press Enter to confirm the replace or F12 (Cancel) to cancel the request.
  - The Global Process List appears.

#### Change a Global Process to a Local Process

You can change a global process to a local process while performing a copy on any global process in the global process selection list.

#### To change global process PROC01 to a local process in the SYS01 system image

1. Enter **C** beside PROC01 in the Global Process List.

The Process Definition panel appears.

2. Change the System Name to SYS01 and press F3 (File).

The Global Process List appears.

To view the new local process, access the list of processes for the system image that you copied it to.

## Merge Two Global Process Images

You can merge two global process images and replace the active global process image with a backup version.

#### To merge global process images \$PROCESS 0002 and \$PROCESS 0001

1. Enter **C** beside the \$PROCESS 0002 on the Global Process Image List.

The Global Process Image Definition panel appears.

2. Change the Database Version number to 0001 and press F3 (File).

The Confirm System Image Merge panel appears.

- 3. Enter **YES** in the input field if you want to overlay like-named components.
- 4. Press F6 (Confirm).

The global process images are merged.

# Chapter 25: Setting Up the Initialization File

This section contains the following topics:

Generate an Initialization File (see page 279)

How You Configure the Initialization File (see page 280)

Start Your Region from an Initialization File (see page 282)

## Generate an Initialization File

If you are deploying multiple regions, each region must be configured for its local environment. When you have configured your first region, you can build an initialization file from that region and then configure it for use with your other regions. This removes the need to customize each region with Customizer.

The tasks outlined below show how to configure a region from an initialization file. The initialization file is produced from a running region for your product.

#### To generate an initialization file

1. From the Primary Menu, enter /CUSTOM.

The Customizer panel appears.

2. Select option G - Generate INI Procedure.

The Customizer: Generate INI Procedure panel appears.

Enter the data set name and the member name of the file in the Generate INI File Details section.

**Note:** The data set must be in the commands concatenation of the RUNSYSIN member for the region in which it is used.

- 4. Ensure that the member name and data set name are correct. Enter **YES** in the Replace Member? field if you are replacing an existing member.
- 5. Press F6 (Action).

The initialization file is generated.

6. Make a note of the data set and member names and press F6 (Confirm).

The details are saved.

## How You Configure the Initialization File

The initialization file must be configured before it can be used for other regions. You can perform this configuration as follows:

- Configure an individual initialization file for each region.
- Configure a common initialization file for multiple regions.

You can use system variables and static system variables with both of these methods. The variables substitute for the initialization parameters in the INI file.

## **Configure a Common Initialization File**

You can customize an initialization file using variables so that it can be used for multiple regions.

#### To configure a common initialization file

- 1. Create a data set that is available to every region to be initialized from the common initialization file, for example, PROD.INIFILES.
- 2. Add the newly created data set to the COMMANDS concatenation of the RUNSYSIN member to every region to be initialized from the common initialization file.

Note: RUNSYSIN is located in TESTEXEC.

- 3. Copy the initialization file generated into the new INIFILES data set.
- 4. Use your TSO editing tool to open the initialization file in edit mode.
- 5. Replace the relevant generated variables in the initialization file with the following system variables:

#### &ZDSNQLCL

The local VSAM data set qualifier.

#### &ZDSNQSHR

The shared VSAM data set qualifier.

#### &ZACBNAME

The primary VTAM ACB name used by the region.

#### &ZDSNQLNV

The local non-VSAM data set qualifier.

#### &ZDSNQSNV

The shared non-VSAM data set qualifier.

#### &ZNMDID

The domain identifier.

#### &ZNMSUP

The system user prefix.

6. Replace the relevant generated variables in the initialization file with the z/OS static system symbols as follows:

## **&SYSCLONE**

The short name for the system.

#### &SYSNAME

The name of the system.

#### &SYSPLEX

The name of the sysplex.

#### &SYSR1

The IPL VOLSER.

7. Save the changes to the initialization file.

## **Configure Individual Initialization Files**

You can customize an initialization file generated from one region so that it can be used for another region.

#### To configure an individual initialization file for each region

- 1. Use your TSO editing tool to open the initialization file in edit mode.
- 2. Substitute the parameters in the initialization file with *one* of the following:
  - Hard-coded data set names for the region in which the file is used
  - System variables

This enables the initialization file to work in regions with different data sets than the region in which it was generated.

- 3. Save the changes to the initialization file.
- 4. Copy the initialization file to the region's TESTEXEC or one of the other libraries in the COMMANDS concatenation.
- 5. Repeat steps 1 to 4 for each initialization file needed.

**Note:** The region from which the original initialization file was generated should have the same product sets as the destination regions that will use that initialization file.

# Start Your Region from an Initialization File

The name of the initialization file must be specified by the INIFILE parameter in the RUNSYSIN member.

Updating your RUNSYSIN member causes your region to set its initialization parameters from the initialization file. All Customizer parameter settings are overwritten.

#### To update your RUNSYSIN member

- 1. Use a text editor to open your RUNSYSIN member.
- 2. Insert the line PPREF='INIFILE=membername' into your RUNSYSIN member.
- 3. Save the member.

# Chapter 26: Administering a Multisystem Environment

This section contains the following topics:

Multisystem Operation (see page 283)
<u>Linked Regions and Database Synchronization</u> (see page 287)
<u>Display Linked Regions</u> (see page 292)
<u>Unlink Regions</u> (see page 293)
<u>Transmission of Records</u> (see page 293)

## **Multisystem Operation**

Your product provides focal point management to support multisystem operation. Management is at a focal point with subordinates and other focal points feeding information to it, as follows:

#### **Focal**

Supports full connectivity between multiple regions. Regions linked in this way are known as focal point regions.

When regions are communicating with each other, authorized users can monitor and control all managed resources from any terminal connected to any region.

All focal point regions have the knowledge base synchronized.

#### **Subordinate**

Enables you to reduce the amount of traffic in your multisystem environment. You link subordinates to focal point regions that provide central monitoring and control. A subordinate has visibility and control of the resources that belong to the local system image only.

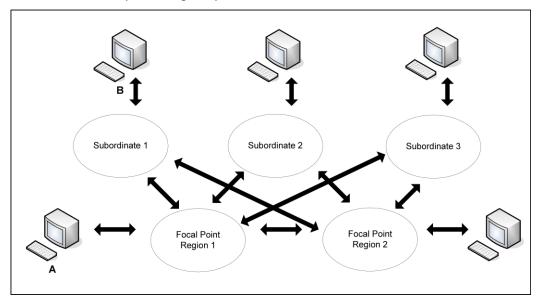
In a multisystem environment, each region runs independently of the other regions. If no communication links are available, each region still provides full monitoring, control, and automation of its own managed resources.

To link a focal point region to another focal point region, or to link a subordinate to a focal point region, you link and synchronize the regions.

#### **Notes:**

- You can link as focal points only those regions that are configured for the same products. For a subordinate-focal point link, the products configured in the subordinate region can be a subset of the products configured in the focal point region.
- Subordinate regions assume a system image name that cannot be used for any other region in the multisystem environment. We recommend that you use a unique system image name for subordinate regions running on the same LPAR. If you use express setup, the system image name defaults to the SMF ID.

The following diagram shows an example of a multisystem environment. Logging on to Console A allows visibility to all resources. Logging on to Console B allows visibility to the subordinate system image only.



#### **Notes:**

- A focal point region links to all other focal point regions and subordinates.
- A subordinate links to focal point regions but does not link to other subordinates.

## Links in a Multisystem Environment

The link established between two regions in a multisystem environment is an INMC link. The link is used to pass knowledge base updates, status change notification, and other information between the two regions. The link can use any combination of the following communications protocols: VTAM, TCP/IP, and EPS. VTAM is the default.

For each region, the MULTISYS parameter group specifies the available communication access methods. If TCP/IP is used, ensure that the SOCKETS parameter group is activated.

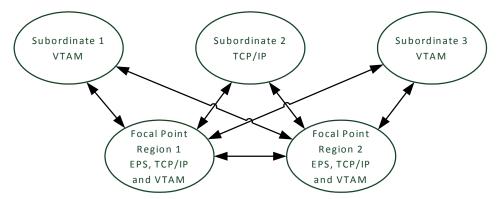
The INMC link between any two regions uses the access methods enabled by *both* regions (that is, the intersection of the two MULTISYS parameter groups). When multiple access methods are enabled, the link can use all these methods. This improves reliability because the link functions when one of the enabled methods is available.

When you plan your multisystem environment, ensure the following:

- All focal point regions must support at least one common type of access method.
- A subordinate region must support an access method that is also supported in all the focal point regions.

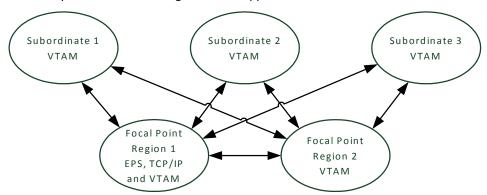
#### **Example: Focal Point Regions Support All Access Methods**

This example shows a multisystem link configuration when the focal point regions support ESP, TCP/IP, and VTAM. The subordinate regions can support any one of these access methods.



#### **Example: One Focal Point Region Supports VTAM Only**

This example shows a multisystem link configuration when a focal point region supports VTAM only. The subordinate regions must support VTAM.



#### Multisystem Support in a Sysplex

With the EPS access method, you can use the sysplex cross-system coupling facility (XCF) to implement your multisystem environment.

#### Notes:

- To support the EPS access method, a SOLVE SSI region must be active in each of the co-operating systems and must be registered to XCF.
- To register the SSI region to XCF, ensure that XCF=YES is set in the SSI parameters member of the SSIPARM data set. This is the default setting at installation.

## **Multisystem Implementation Considerations**

When you implement your multisystem environment, consider the following:

- Ensure that the <u>link requirements</u> (see page 285) are satisfied for the planned multisystem environment.
- When you link two regions, the knowledge base in one region overwrites the knowledge base in the other region. You must transmit all system images used by the local region to the target focal point region prior to synchronization.
- You can only link a region to a focal point region. The focal point region can be a stand-alone region or part of a multisystem environment.
- You can only link a stand-alone region into a multisystem environment.

## How a Multisystem Environment Is Established

When you install your product, two databases are downloaded. These databases, which can be customized to suit your requirements, are:

- An icon panel database, where icon panel definitions are stored for the graphical monitor
- The RAMDB, where system image, resource, availability map, process, macro, command, and other definitions are stored

Together, these databases form the knowledge base.

Populate these databases with definitions specific to your environment. These definitions can include the system image definitions for any other regions that you want to install in your environment in the future.

As you establish regions, link the new regions to the first region by using the <u>Link Region and Synchronize Database</u> (see page 287) option. When databases are linked, future synchronization is automatic. Changes to the database in one region are sent to the databases in the linked regions that have visibility to those resources and system images.

**Note:** Synchronization does not apply to the NCL procedures represented by the registered commands and macros. Changes to these NCL procedures are not automatically reflected in the linked regions.

In a multisystem environment, you can monitor and control the resources in all linked regions from a single focal point.

## **Linked Regions and Database Synchronization**

When the first region is created in your environment, two databases are downloaded and can be customized for your environment. Together, these two databases (the Automation Services database and the icon panel library) form the knowledge base.

To build a multisystem environment, you start by linking two regions, and then continue to link in any other regions. The linking process also synchronizes the knowledge bases of these regions.

#### **Notes**

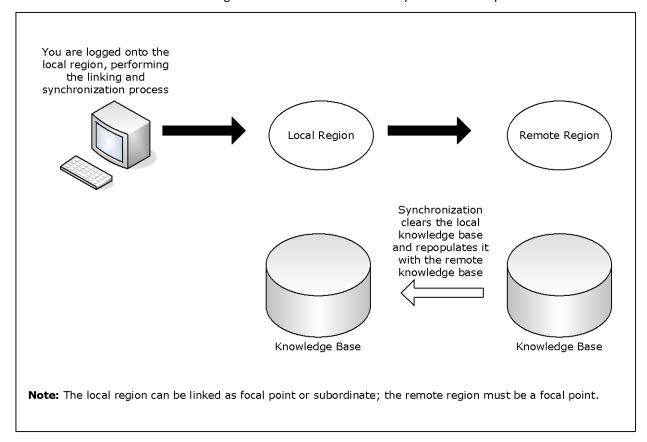
- For linked focal point regions, synchronization is complete and the focal point knowledge bases are identical.
- For linked subordinates, synchronization is complete only to the extent of the relevant definitions in the knowledge base. For example, a subordinate knowledge base does not contain all system images. A subordinate knowledge base contains only those images that represent the environment the subordinate is managing.

When you link two regions, the local region in which you perform the link operation receives the knowledge base from the remote region. This remote region must be a focal point region. When you link a region into an existing multisystem environment, that region must be a stand-alone region.

**Important!** During the linking and synchronization process, the knowledge base in the local region is overwritten by the knowledge base from the remote focal region. If the local knowledge base has customized definitions that you want to retain, transmit these definitions to the remote knowledge base before you link the regions. Otherwise, the local knowledge base definitions are overwritten and lost.

**Note:** If the local region terminates during the linking and synchronization process, the local knowledge base can become corrupted and you cannot restart the region. Replace the corrupted knowledge base with your backup, restart the region, and resynchronize the knowledge base. For more information about backups, see the *Reference Guide*.

The following illustration shows the link and synchronization operation.



After you link the regions, the knowledge bases are synchronized and remain synchronized. If you change the knowledge base in one region, the changes are propagated to the other regions.

### **Background User Considerations**

When you establish a region, a UAMS background system (BSYS) user ID for that region is automatically defined. The background user ID comprises the four-byte region domain ID, followed by the characters BSYS. To establish fully-functioning communication links between regions, the BSYS user ID of each region must be duplicated in each linked region.

During a link and synchronize procedure, any required BSYS user IDs are defined automatically to UAMS, provided that the following conditions apply:

- You have UAMS maintenance authority on *all* the linked regions.
- The existing multisystem linked regions are active when the request is made.

If either of these conditions does not apply, then any required BSYS user IDs must be defined manually to UAMS. The simplest way to do this is to copy the BSYS user ID for the current region from the UAMS User Definition List and update the user ID. To access the UAMS maintenance functions, enter the **/UAMS** shortcut.

The link and synchronize request is rejected if both of the following apply:

- You do not have UAMS maintenance authority in the local or the remote region.
   (The user ID of the person who requests the link and synchronize procedure must be defined in the local and remote regions.)
- The required BSYS user IDs are not defined in the local or the remote region.

**Important!** If you use an external security system, you must manually define the BSYS user IDs of the remote systems to your external security system.

# **Link and Synchronize Regions**

**Important!** Do not add, update, or delete knowledge base records in any linked regions while synchronization is in progress. These changes may not be propagated to the new region. Before you perform synchronization, ensure that you back up the knowledge base.

#### To link and synchronize regions

- Log on to the region to synchronize with the source (remote) region.
   The source region contains the knowledge base you want.
- 2. Enter /MADMIN at the prompt.

The Multi-System Support Menu appears.

#### 3. Select option SD.

This establishes a link between the local region and another region, and updates the knowledge base of the current region.

The Remote System Identification panel appears.

4. Complete the following fields:

#### **Primary Name**

Specifies the ACB name of the remote focal point region to which you want to link this region.

#### **Role in Multi-System Operation**

Specifies whether this region is a focal point region or a subordinate region. A focal point region must satisfy the following conditions:

- The product sets in all focal point regions match.
- At least one access method must be available.

#### **Subordinate System Image Name**

(Optional) If you specified subordinate, specify the name of the system image that is to be used by it.

**Important!** Each subordinate is assigned a unique system image name, and it can use an image by that system image name only. When you build your environment for a subordinate, you must build the environment under the system image name specified during the linking operation.

Subordinate regions are restricted to loading only system images with the name specified here. Different system image versions can be maintained under the system image name.

#### **Work Dataset**

(Optional) Specifies the VSAM data set to use to reduce the time for synchronization.

The following fields specify the communication access methods to be used during synchronization. You can select any combination of the access methods; however, you can only select an access method if it is enabled in the MULTISYS parameter group.

#### Use VTAM?

(Optional) Specifies whether to use VTAM for communication.

#### Use EPS?

(Optional) Specifies whether to use EPS for communication.

#### TCP/IP Host Name/Addr

(Optional) Specifies the TCP/IP host name and address of the remote region.

#### **Port Number**

(Optional) Specifies the TCP/IP port number of the remote region.

5. Press F6 (Action) to initiate the linking process.

A confirmation panel appears.

6. Press F6 (Confirm) to initiate region linking and knowledge base synchronization.

A status panel appears.

**Note:** Press F3 (Exit) to exit the status panel at any time without affecting the link and synchronize procedure. If you exit early, note the task number for later reference.

## **Monitor the Synchronization Procedure**

While the synchronization procedure is in progress, the Synchronize Database Status panel is refreshed automatically every 10 seconds. This panel can be refreshed manually at any time by pressing the Enter key.

#### To check the status of the synchronization

- 1. From the Multi-System Support Menu, select option L to view the administration task log.
- 2. Enter S beside the appropriate entry from the log to view the status of the task.

The administration task log may contain up to 50 entries at any given time. Each task is allocated a sequential task number (between 1 and 50) as it commences. When the maximum task number is reached, allocation restarts from one and the oldest status records are overwritten. To delete a completed or failed task from the log, apply the D (Delete) action.

## **Knowledge Base Synchronization Maintenance**

Automation Services maintains synchronization between linked knowledge bases by using a staging file.

When a knowledge base update occurs, information about the update is stored in the staging file as follows:

- For an update in a focal point region, a separate update record is written for each affected linked region.
- For an update in a subordinate region, a single update record is written for a linked focal point region.

A record stays in the staging file until the update is performed successfully in the destined region. If the region is inactive, the record stays in the staging file until the region is started.

**Important!** If the staging file becomes full, knowledge base synchronization cannot be maintained and the local region is unlinked automatically. A staging file can become full if a remote linked region remains inactive for an extended period of time. If an extended downtime is planned for a linked region, unlink the remote region before inactivation.

# **Display Linked Regions**

To list the linked regions in your multisystem environment, enter **/LISTREG** at the prompt.

The Linked Regions panel displays the ACB names, the mode these regions are linked in, and a brief description of the linked regions. The panel also displays the status of the data flow traffic managers.

Press F11 (Right) to scroll right to display more information.

# **Unlink Regions**

You may want to unlink a region from the other regions in a multisystem environment (for example, for maintenance purposes). If a region is no longer of use and you want to remove it, ensure that you unlink it first. An unlinked region is a stand-alone region.

#### To unlink a region

Log on to the region you want to unlink and enter /MADMIN.U at the prompt.
 The Confirm Unlink Panel appears.

**Note:** To cancel the unlinking procedure, press F12 (Cancel) now.

2. Press Enter to proceed with the unlinking procedure.

To relink a region, link that region with one of the regions in the multisystem environment.

# **Transmission of Records**

You can transmit, that is, copy knowledge base records from the local region to a remote region that is not linked to it.

You cannot transmit a system image to a region in which the image is currently loaded. You cannot transmit and replace a rule set when the rule set is currently loaded in the remote (target) region.

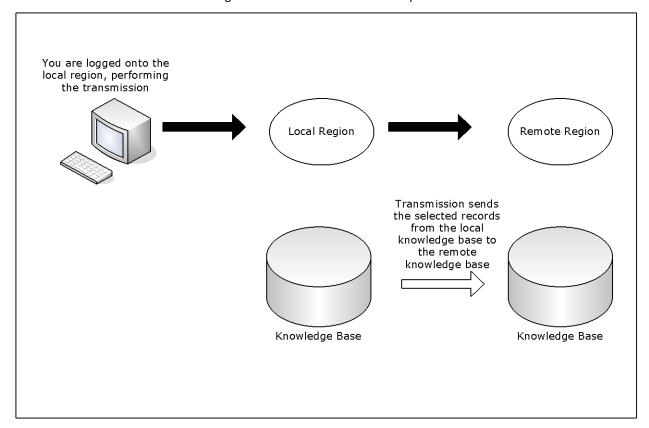
By specifying the appropriate transmission mode on the Remote System Identification panel, you can specify how to update the records in the remote region.

The following transmission modes are available:

- Replace (R) deletes any existing remote records, and then transmits the local records.
- Overlay (O) replaces existing remote records with the same name, adds records that do not exist, but does not delete any remote records.
- Merge (M) adds records that do not exist, but does not affect existing records in the remote knowledge base.

#### **Transmit Records**

The following illustration shows the transmit operation.



#### To transmit knowledge base records

- 1. Log on to the region from which you want to transmit the records.
- 2. Enter /MADMIN at the prompt.

The Multi-System Support Menu appears.

- 3. Specify the option you want at the prompt and press Enter.
  - A Remote System Identification panel appears.
- 4. Specify the ACB name (primary name) of the region to which you want to transmit records.

If you specified the TI, TS, or TR option, go to Step 5. If you specified any other transmission options, go to Step 6.

#### 5. Complete the following fields:

#### **System Name**

Specifies the name of the system to transmit. Applies to option TI only.

#### Version

Specifies the version of the system to transmit. Applies to options TI and TS only.

#### **Ruleset Name**

Specifies the name of the rule set to transmit. Applies to option TR only.

- 6. Do *one* of the following:
  - If you want to replace a set of records or all elements of a component, enter REPLACE in the Transmission Mode field.
  - If you want to update a region by adding new records without updating existing records, enter MERGE in the Transmission Mode field.
  - If you want to update a region by adding new records and updating existing records, enter OVERLAY in the Transmission Mode field.
- 7. Specify the communication access methods to use for transmitting the selected records. You can enable any combination of the access methods.
- 8. Press F6 (Action) to select the specified option.

If a selection list appears, go to Step 9. If the Confirm Transmit panel appears, go to Step 11.

- 9. Do one of the following:
  - If you selected option TC with a transmission mode of REPLACE, enter **S** next to the categories that you want to transmit.
  - If you selected option TC with a transmission mode of MERGE or OVERLAY, enter S next to the categories that you want to transmit.
     To select specific definitions in a category for transmission, perform the following steps:
    - a. Enter **L** (List) next to the category to list the definitions.
    - b. Enter **S** next to the definitions to transmit.
  - If you selected other transmission options with a transmission mode of MERGE or OVERLAY, take one of the following actions:
    - To transmit all definitions, press F4 (All).
    - To transmit specific definitions, enter S next to the definitions that you want to transmit.
- 10. Press F6 (Transmit).

A Confirm Transmit panel appears.

11. Press Enter to confirm transmission.

A status panel appears, showing the progress of the transmission.

**Note:** If you exit the status panel, you can check the status of the task by viewing the administration task log. Before you exit, note the task number for future reference.

# Chapter 27: Implementing the NetMaster-to-NetSpy Interface

This section contains the following topics:

<u>Customize the NetMaster-to-NetSpy Interface</u> (see page 297)

<u>Manage NetMaster-to-NetSpy Connections</u> (see page 298)

<u>Manage CA NetSpy Alerts and Monitors</u> (see page 298)

Issue CA NetSpy Commands (see page 300)

# Customize the NetMaster-to-NetSpy Interface

If you use CA NetSpy, you can define an interface to it to perform some CA NetSpy functions from your CA NetMaster region.

To customize the interface, update the NETSPYLINKS parameter group in Customizer.

#### To update the NETSPYLINKS parameter group

1. Enter /PARMS at the prompt.

The Customizer: Parameter Groups list appears.

2. Enter **U** beside the NETSPYLINKS parameter group.

The NETSPYLINKS - Links to NetSpy Applications panel appears.

- 3. In the Connections fields, specify the values of the NSYXNAME parameter in the INITPRM member of the CA NetSpy that you want to link to your region.
- 4. Enter a value in each field that you require.

For more information about completing this panel, press F1 (Help).

5. Press F6 (Action).

The changes are actioned.

6. Press F3 (File).

The changes are saved.

**Note:** The Enable NetSpy Alert Processing field in the NETSPYLINKS parameter group lets you switch off the receipt of all alerts from CA NetSpy. Normally, you should leave the field to its default value of YES; however, you may want to enter **NO** to switch the alerts off under abnormal conditions (for example, when the region is flooded by these alerts).

# Manage NetMaster-to-NetSpy Connections

Your region provides a control for the NetMaster-to-NetSpy interface. From this interface you can do the following:

Activate and inactivate connections to CA NetSpy.

**Note:** These connections are defined in the NETSPYLINKS parameter group.

- Use the console command interface to modify control parameters for CA NetSpy.
- Stop the interface to CA NetSpy.

#### To control connections to CA NetSpy

1. Enter /NASCON at the prompt.

The NetSpy Connections panel appears. This panel displays the status of defined links to CA NetSpy.

```
----- NetSpy Connections -----
Command ===>
                                                      Scroll ===> CSR
                                  A=Activate I=Inactivate P=Stop F=Modify
   Link Name
              ACB Name Status
                               System Ver STC
   $ESLA31IVS40 - FAILED
                                                      0
                                           N/A
   $ESLCSNM21NX -
                                                      0
                      FAILED
                                           N/A
   $ESLCSNM22NX CSNM22NS RUNNING
                               XE61
                                       11.0 N/A
                                                     60
   $ESLQANM1NX -
                      FAILED
                                           N/A
   **END**
```

**Note:** For more information about the information displayed and actions available on this panel, press F1 (Help).

# Manage CA NetSpy Alerts and Monitors

Your region can receive alerts from CA NetSpy. CA NetMaster alerts are generated for each alert generated by CA NetSpy that is received. The following types of alerts are generated:

#### **Alerts from EPS Services**

For general Alert Monitors defined through CA NetSpy.

#### Alerts from the NetMaster-to-NetSpy interface

For user Alert Monitors defined through CA NetMaster.

### Manage NetSpy User Alert Monitors in CA NetMaster

#### To manage CA NetSpy user Alert Monitors

1. Enter /NASMON at the prompt.

The NetSpy Monitors List appears. This panel lists the CA NetSpy user Alert Monitors defined for a resource.

**Note:** For more information about the information displayed and actions available on this panel, press F1 (Help).

# **Define CA NetSpy User Alert Monitors**

Authorized users can define, delete, and update CA NetSpy user Alert Monitors for a particular resource.

#### To define a CA NetSpy user Alert Monitor

1. Enter /NASMON at the prompt.

The NetSpy Monitors List appears.

Note: For more information about these monitors, press F1 (Help)

2. Press F4 (Add).

The NetSpy: Monitor Definition panel appears.

3. Complete the fields on this panel and press F3 (File).

The definition is saved.

# **Issue CA NetSpy Commands**

Your region supports a CA NetSpy command interface. This interface allows a subset of display commands to return information to your region.

#### To issue a command

1. Enter /NASCMD at the prompt.

The NetSpy Commands panel appears. This panel lists the CA NetSpy commands that you can issue.

2. Enter **S** next to the command.

The NetSpy: Command Arguments panel appears.

- 3. Enter values in the fields for any operands that you want to use.
- 4. Press F6 (Action).

The command output appears.

**Note:** You can also issue a command, together with any operands, by entering it directly at the command prompt on the NetSpy Commands panel. If you enter a command without any operands, it is issued with its default operands.

# **Appendix A: Variables**

This section contains the following topics:

SNA Resource Variables (see page 301)

## **SNA Resource Variables**

Variables let you obtain information about an SNA resource, access knowledge base data, find out about the status of services, SNA groups and non-SNA resources, and extract information about messages.

You can use the following variables to retrieve data about an SNA resource and to pass values to the processes and NCL procedures invoked from SNA resource models.

#### &ZRSDESC

Contains the description of the resource.

#### &ZRSDOMAIN

Contains the name of the VTAM SSCP that owns the resource.

#### &ZRSDSTATUS

Contains the desired state of the resource.

#### &ZRSINREC

Contains the recovery status of the resource: NO or YES.

#### &ZRSMAJNODE

Contains the name of the major node that owns the resource. However, if the resource itself is a major node (as indicated by the &ZRSRSTYPE variable), this variable contains the type of the major node.

#### &ZRSMODEL

Contains the name of the SNA resource model associated with the resource.

#### &ZRSNETID

Contains the ID of the network to which the VTAM domain belongs.

#### &ZRSPRNAME

Contains the name of the upstream (superior) resource.

#### &ZRSPRTYPE

Contains the type of the upstream (superior) resource.

#### &ZRSREASON

Contains the reason for the resource state. The state may be set when the resource is discovered or may be set as a result of a state change caused by the receipt of a message.

#### &ZRSRSNAME

Contains the name of the resource.

#### &ZRSSTAMP

Contains the time when the resource was last updated, in the format *yyyymmddhhmmss*:

#### уууу

Identifies the year (for example, 2001).

#### mm

Identifies the month (for example, 01).

#### dd

Identifies the day of the month.

#### **hhmmss**

Identifies the time of the day.

#### &ZRSSTATUS

Contains the actual state of the resource.

#### &ZRSRSTYPE

Contains the type of the resource.

#### &ZRSUSRTAG1 through &ZRSUSRTAG5

Contains the user-defined resource tags.

#### &ZRSVSTATUS

Contains the VTAM state of the resource.

# Appendix B: SNA Resource Message Routing Codes

This section contains the following topics:

Message Routing Codes (see page 303)

# **Message Routing Codes**

The region intercepts PPO and CNM messages and resends them with specific MVS routing codes.

A resent PPO or CNM message may have the following routing codes:

17

Indicates an SNA resource message.

18

Indicates that the job name associated with the message is the SNA resource name.

19

Indicates that the message is the response to an operator command.

**Note:** If a message is not assigned a routing code of 18, it indicates that the SNA resource name has not been determined. The region will process the message word by word to find a match with an SNA resource name.

# **Appendix C: Health Checks**

This section contains the following topics:

<u>CA Health Checker</u> (see page 305)

NM ACB (see page 306)

NM INITIALIZATION (see page 307)

NM SOCKETS (see page 308)

NM SSI (see page 309)

NM\_WEB (see page 310)

# **CA Health Checker**

The CA Health Checker provides a simple and consistent method for CA products to create health checks to run under the IBM Health Checker for z/OS. The IBM Health Checker for z/OS helps you identify potential problems in your z/OS environment by checking system or product parameters and system status against recommended settings. CA NetMaster NA health checks are automatically activated on the target system when the product is started on a system with IBM Health Checker for z/OS installed and configured.

The CHECK\_OWNER for all CA NetMaster NA health checks is CA\_NM.

Use either CA SYSVIEW or SDSF Health Checker displays to list and view the checks. View messages generated by CA health checks in the MVS System Log.

# NM\_ACB

#### Description

This CA NetMaster NA health check checks that the primary ACB of the region is open. This check runs every 5 minutes.

#### **Best Practice**

VTAM is required to access the 3270 interface. If you primarily use the WebCenter interface to access you region, you can lower the priority of this health check.

#### **Parameters accepted**

None.

#### **Debug Support**

No.

#### **Verbose Support**

No.

#### Reference

None.

#### **Non-exception Messages**

The following messages can appear in health checker:

- This region's primary ACB, acbname, is open.
- The region is shutting down. Check is not relevant at this time.

#### **Exception Messages**

- CAH0001E The check timed out while waiting for a response to a command.
- NMH0106E This region's primary ACB, acbname, is not open.

# **NM\_INITIALIZATION**

#### Description

This CA NetMaster NA health check checks region initialization. The check runs once at region startup. If an exception occurs, the check repeats every 5 minutes until initialization is successful.

#### **Best Practice**

Follow the Install Utility procedures in the *Installation Guide* to set up your region, and ensure that the parameters are specified correctly.

#### **Parameters Accepted**

None.

#### **Debug Support**

No.

#### **Verbose Support**

No.

#### Reference

See the online help for region parameter groups.

#### **Non-exception Messages**

The following messages can appear in health checker:

- The region has initialized successfully.
- The region is initializing. Check is not relevant at this time.
- The region is shutting down. Check is not relevant at this time

#### **Exception Messages**

- CAH0001E The check timed out while waiting for a response to a command.
- NMH0104E Initialization errors have occurred in region regionname.

# **NM\_SOCKETS**

#### Description

This CA NetMaster NA health check checks that the sockets are available to support IP connections. The check runs every 15 minutes.

#### **Best Practice**

To help ensure IP connections, the port number for the connection must be specified and not in use by another task.

#### **Parameters Accepted**

None.

#### **Debug Support**

No.

#### **Verbose Support**

No.

#### Reference

None.

#### **Non-exception Messages**

The following messages can appear in health checker:

- Sockets are configured and active. HTTP port is *nnnn* URL is http://*nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn:nnn*
- The region is initializing. Check is not relevant at this time.
- The region is shutting down. Check is not relevant at this time

#### **Exception Messages**

- CAH0001E The check timed out while waiting for a response to a command.
- NMH0110E TCP/IP interface is not active, status is *ccccccc*.
- NMH0111E No port number has been specified for this region.

# NM\_SSI

#### Description

This CA NetMaster NA health check checks that the SOLVE SSI SSID is defined and connected. The check runs every 15 minutes.

#### **Best Practice**

Ensure that the following conditions are met:

- The SOLVE SSI started task is active.
- The SOLVE SSI SSID value for the region matches the SSID= parameter for the SOLVE SSI started task.
- The SOLVE SSI SSID and the AOM SSID are different.

#### **Parameters Accepted**

None.

#### **Debug Support**

No.

#### **Verbose Support**

No.

#### Reference

None.

#### **Non-exception Messages**

The following messages can appear in health checker:

- SOLVE SSI SSID correctly defined and connected. SSID is *ssidname*.
- The region is initializing. Check is not relevant at this time.
- The region is shutting down. Check is not relevant at this time.

#### **Exception Messages**

- CAH0001E The check timed out while waiting for a response to a command.
- NMH0108E SSID error, no SSID specified.
- NMH0108E SSID error, *ssidname* is not connected.
- NMH0108E SSID error, SSID matches AOM SSID(ssidname).

# **NM\_WEB**

#### Description

This CA NetMaster NA health check checks that the WebCenter interface is available. This check runs every 15 minutes.

#### **Best Practice**

Use the Install Utility to set up the region. During the process, specify the web interface port.

#### **Parameters Accepted**

None.

#### **Debug Support**

No.

#### **Verbose Support**

No.

#### Reference

None.

#### **Non-exception Messages**

The following messages can appear in health checker:

- The region is initializing. Check is not relevant at this time.
- The region is shutting down. Check is not relevant at this time.
- The WebCenter interface is active. HTTP port is *nnnn* URL is http://*nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn:nnn*

#### **Exception Messages**

- CAH0001E The check timed out while waiting for a response to a command.
- NMH0113E The WebCenter interface is not [active | configured].

# Index

\$	alerts
CLORROW procedure + 100	analysis • 235
\$LOBROW procedure • 199	customization • 230
\$LOPROC procedure • 199	enable from external applications • 226
\$PSDS81X printer exit for a data set • 256	forward • 226
\$RMEXSTR exit • 46	generation using processes • 125, 271
\$RSUSRAX network discovery exit • 40	multiple email addressees, to • 222
%	suppression • 230
	ALLOC command • 209
% wildcard character • 62	applications
0	dynamic, discovery of • 38
&	automatic log swapping • 210
&INTCMD verb • 208	automation
_	event-based • 121
A	requirements, defining • 77
actions, message rules • 163	Automation Services
activation	multisystem operation • 287
	transmit components • 293
preprocessing • 70	transmit service definitions • 293
SNA group • 57	AUTOSNACNTL parameter group • 35, 38
activity logs	AUTOTABLES parameter group • 30
allocate • 34	
cross referencing • 209	В
deal with I/O errors • 210	BSYS, effect on multisystem implementation • 289
file structure • 204	2075, effect of mainsystem implementation - 205
format • 207, 208	C
hardcopy • 206, 208	0.000/1.1/01
LOGFILES parameter group • 33	CA OPS/MVS integration • 226
logged information • 199	CA Service Desk
online swapping • 202	create requests • 231, 232
swapping • 208	changing global operation mode • 48
system command logging • 34	clear printer spool • 256
system message logging • 33	cold start • 35
actual states	commands, logging of system commands • 34
SNA group • 66	commands, SHOW
alert administration, access • 213	SHOW PARMS • 25
alert history	commands, specific
implement • 233	ALLOC • 209
reorganize files and monitor space usage • 234	GLOBAL • 48
Alert Monitor	LOGSWAP • 209
define filters • 224	SHUTFORCE • 49
display format • 225	SHUTSYS • 49
enable alerts from external applications • 226	STARTSYS • 50
forward alerts • 226	configure multiple regions • 279
implement alert history • 233	connecting
implement CA Service Desk • 231	SOLVE SSI. to • 19

considerations	functions • 120
multisystem implementation • 286	initial actions • 134
trouble ticket data entry definition • 221	message groups • 132
console message consolidation • 121	message rules • 131
control • 122	timers • 134, 139
contacting technical support ◆ 4	variables • 137
control characters, printer	EventView rule sets • 128
add • 254	adding • 128
correlation	adding rules • 131
keys • 160	copying • 136
cross referencing logs • 209	deleting • 136
CT relational operator • 151	including other EventView rule sets • 136
customer support, contacting • 4	statistics • 130
customize	status • 129
information about SNA resources • 40	system images, and • 130
SNA resource discovery component • 35	testing • 129
your region • 25	transmitting • 293
Customizer parameter groups • 26	EventView variable values
FTLOGS • 200	message rule criteria, as • 156
SYSTEMID ◆ 26	retrieving • 137
	examples
D	CICS alerts, generating • 271
database	examples, network filters • 40
	exit procedures, NCL
icon panel • 287	system image load • 46
database synchronization maintain • 292	exits
default printers	printers • 256
assign • 255	extracting data to a file
delivery of messages • 158	alerts • 235
-	
desired state management • 74 SNA group • 57	F
display formats	file IDs logs • 200
• •	file IDs, logs • 200
create • 225	filters
domain ID, defining • 26	SNA resources • 38, 51
downstream indicators	focal point regions
>• 62	knowledge base synchronization • 287
>> • 62	form definitions • 253
defined • 62	list • 254
SNA group filtering, effect on • 63	formats
E	activity log • 207
	logged information • 207
emails of printed output • 261	forward alerts
EPS (EndPoint Services), multisystem support in	SNMP trap definition • 227
sysplex • 286	to CA NSM • 229
EQ relational operator • 151	to CA Service Desk • 229
errors in activity log • 210	to NetView • 228
EventView	
alerts, example • 271	

G	K
GE relational operator • 152 GLOBAL command • 48 global operation mode    AUTOMATED • 48    change • 48    MANUAL • 48 global variables	knowledge base linked • 287 monitor synchronization • 291 staging files • 292 synchronize focal point regions • 287 synchronize subordinates • 287 update • 292
data preservation • 22	L
graphical monitor     customize • 99     SNA groups • 72 GT relational operator • 153  H hardcopy log, format • 208	LE relational operator • 154 links multisystem support • 285 unlink a region • 293 LOAD command checkpoint restart • 47
Health Checker • 305	exit • 46
I	log data sets, wrap • 209 log file IDs • 200
icon panel database • 287 icons  SNA groups • 72 SNA resource status • 72 identify your region to users • 26 implement CA Service Desk     request assignments • 231     request updating • 232     software requirements • 231 implementation considerations, multisystem     environment • 286 implementation process     message profiles • 124 inactivation, SNA group • 57 initial actions     EventView rule sets • 134     execution of • 136 initialization files • 279	log files, allocate • 34 LOGFILES parameter group • 33 LOGPAGE operand • 208 logs     activity • 204 LOGSWAP command • 209 LT relational operator • 155  M  management of SNA resources • 73 message groups     EventView • 132     including message rules in • 132 message handling     unmatched messages • 29 message profiles     implementation • 124 message rules     actions • 163
J JCL parameters     customize your region • 25     displaying current settings • 25     specify • 25 JCL parameters, specific     NMDID • 26	associating with message groups • 132 EventView • 131 filtering criteria • 145, 148 message modification • 160 message suppression • 158 message text analysis • 149 overlapping rules • 157 wildcards in message text • 147 messages

delivery • 158	P
MVS routing codes • 303	
suppressing • 158	panels, specific
suppression rule sets • 121	SNA Group General Description • 60
system, logging of • 33	paper definitions
modify	add • 253
messages • 160	list • 254
monitors	parameter groups
views, defining • 77	AUTOSNACNTL • 35, 38
MSGAWARENESS parameter group • 29, 195	Customizer • 26
multiple regions	FTLOGS • 200
configure • 279	LOGFILES • 33
multisystem support	SYSTEMID • 26
considerations • 286	parameters, GLOBAL command • 48
how it works • 283	persistent global variables • 22
sysplex • 286	PPO messages
MVS routing codes, SNA resource messages • 303	SNA resource discovery, effect on • 37
	unsolicited, logging of • 210
N	printer definitions • 253
NCL propositions	list • 253
NCL procedures	Print-to-Email • 261
\$LOBROW • 199	printer exit procedure
\$LOPROC • 199	for writing to data set • 256
INIT member • 25	printer requirements
PSM to data set exit • 256	clear printer spool • 256
READY member ● 25	control characters • 254
NE relational operator • 156	setup definition ◆ 254
network discovery exit	printers
sample • 40	spool • 256
writing • 40	processes
network filter	variables, use of • 269
add criteria • 38	PSM
customize • 38	access • 252
examples • 40	customize • 251
Network Resources panel	facilities • 251
customizing • 51	send print requests to data set • 256
networks	send print requests to data set • 250
operations, implementing • 77	R
service-driven operations • 74	<u>.</u>
NMDID JCL parameter • 26	region startups
0	confirmation • 20
0	data preservation • 22
online activity log • 207	regions
operation modes	BSYS background user considerations • 289
global • 61	define to users • 26
SNA group • 61	domain ID • 26
overlapping message rules • 157	link • 287
2.2appgessage .a.es ±3/	linked, keeping track of • 292
	start • 20
	stop • 21

SNA group • 56 resource list window, action codes • 59 resources list window, action codes • 59 resources customizing information about SNA resources • 40 restart • 50 routing codes SNA resource messages • 303 RTP PUS, discovery • 38 rule sets, EventView • 128 adding rules • 131 copying • 136 deleting • 136 including other EventView rule sets • 136 message suppression • 121 statistics • 130 status • 129 system images, and • 130 testing • 129  Service definitions, transmit • 293 service-driven operations example • 74 networks • 75 SNA Group Dist panel, actions that can be performed from • 59 SNA group members status, displaying • 12 staty displaying • 12 staty = 128 displaying • 129 SNA resource filter List panel, actions • 52 SNA resource filters • 51 adding • 135 situs • 129 SNA resource management • 73 SNA resources customize discovery • 35 discovery • 38 discovery • 39 discovered • 38 SolvE SSI retry interval • 19 start • 19 st	reporting	SNA groups • 44, 56
SNA group • 56 resource list window, action codes • 59 resources customizing information about SNA resources • 40 restart • 50 routing codes SNA resource messages • 303 RTP PUS, discovery • 38 rule sets, EventView • 128 adding rules • 131 copying • 136 deleting • 136 including other EventView rule sets • 136 message suppression • 121 statistics • 130 status • 129 system images, and • 130 testing • 129  Service definitions, transmit • 293 service definitions, transmit • 293 service definitions, transmit • 293 service definition • 254 SHOW PARMS command • 25 SHOW PARMS command • 25 Shut down • 49 all automated resources • 49 all resources • 50 automated resources • 49 sNA Group General Description panel • 60 SNA Group General Description panel • 60 SNA Group General Description panel • 60 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 swildcard Aracters • 62 state, change of	alerts • 235	activation • 57
desired state maintenance • 57 graphical monitor, display on • 72 identification • 60 inactivation • 57 member selection, effect of >> downstream indicator • 63 members, displaying • 66 operation mode • 61 preactivation processing • 70 services, and • 74 state thresholds • 66 SNA resource messages • 303 RTP PUS, discovery • 38 rule sets, EventView • 128 adding • 128 adding • 128 adding • 128 opying • 136 copying • 136 deleting • 136 including other EventView rule sets • 136 message suppression • 121 statistics • 130 status • 129 system images, and • 130 testing • 129 system images, and • 130 testing • 129  SS service definitions, transmit • 293 service-driven operations example • 74 networks • 74 services and SNA groups • 74 set resource to AuTOMATED • 50 setup definition • 254 SHOW PARMS command • 25 shout down • 49 all automated resources • 49 all resources • 50 automated resources • 49 SNA Group General Description panel • 60 SNA Group Deneral Description panel • 60 SNA Group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 state, change of  desired state maintenance • 57 graphical monitor, display on • 72 identification • 60 inactivation • 57 member selection, effect of >> downstream indicator • 63 indicator • 63 services, and • 74 state thresholds • 66 SNA group members status, displaying • 66 operations environment implementation • 77 SNA Resource filter List panel, actions • 52 SNA resource filter List pa	resource definitions	actual states, determination of • 66
resources customizing information about SNA resources * 40 restart * 50 restart * 50 SNA resource messages * 303 RTP PUs, discovery • 38 rule sets, EventView • 128 adding * 128 adding * 128 adding resources * 131 copying * 136 deleting • 136 including other EventView rule sets • 136 message suppression • 121 statistics • 130 status • 129 system images, and • 130 testing • 129  Sorvice definitions, transmit • 293 service definitions, transmit • 293 service definitions, transmit • 293 service definition • 254 SHOW PARMS command • 25 shut down • 49 all automated resources • 49 all automated resources • 49 all aresources • 50 shutdown all resources • 69 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62 stee, change of state, change of	SNA group ● 56	defined contents • 56
customizing information about SNA resources • 40 restart • 50 routing codes SNA resource messages • 303 RTP PUs, discovery • 38 rule sets, EventView • 128 adding • 128 adding • 128 adding • 128 adding other EventView rule sets • 136 message suppression • 121 statistics • 130 status • 129 system images, and • 130 testing • 129 service definitions, transmit • 293 service definitions or 24 set resource to AUTOMATED • 50 setup definition • 254 SHOW PARMS command • 25 shut down • 49 all resources • 50 automated resources • 49 shl resources • 50 shutdown all resourc	resource list window, action codes • 59	desired state maintenance • 57
40 inactivation • 57 restart • 50 routing codes SNA resource messages • 303 RTP PUs, discovery • 38 rule sets, EventView • 128 adding • 128 adding • 128 adding rules • 131 copying • 136 deleting • 136 including other EventView rule sets • 136 message suppression • 121 statistics • 130 status • 129 system images, and • 130 testing • 129  SS service definitions, transmit • 293 service definitions, transmit • 293 service definitions, transmit • 293 service definition • 574 services and SNA groups • 74 networks • 74 ser resource to AUTOMATEO • 50 setup definition • 254 SHOW PARMS command • 25 shut down • 49 all automated resources • 49 all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 9 SNA group members status, displaying • 66 operation mode • 61 preactivation processing • 70 services, and • 74 state thresholds • 66 SNA poperations environment implementation • 77 SNA resource filter list panel, actions • 52 SNA resource filter list panel, actions • 52 SNA resource filter stop and implementation • 77 SNA resource filter list panel, actions • 52 SNA resource differs • 51 adding • 53 definitions, accessing • 52 in multisystem environment • 51 SNA resources customize discovery • 38 discovery	resources	graphical monitor, display on • 72
restart • 50 routing codes SNA resource messages • 303 RTP PUs, discovery • 38 rule sets, EventView • 128 adding rules • 131 copying • 136 deleting • 136 including other EventView rule sets • 136 message suppression • 121 statistics • 130 status • 129 system images, and • 130 testing • 129  Service definitions, transmit • 293 service definitions transmit • 293 service definitions transmit • 293 service definition • 254 SHOW PARMS command • 25 shut down • 49 all automated resources • 49 all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 59 SNA group members status, displaying • 66 operation mode • 61 preactivation processing • 70 services, and • 74 state thresholds • 66 SNA group members status, displaying • 66 operation mode • 61 preactivation processing • 70 services, and • 74 state thresholds • 66 SNA group members status, displaying • 66 operation mode • 61 preactivation processing • 70 state thresholds • 66 SNA group members indicator • 63 operation mode • 61 preactivation processing • 70 state thresholds • 66 SNA operations environment implementation • 77 SNA resource filter List panel, actions • 52 SNA resource filter List panel, actions • 52 SNA resource filters • 51 adding • 53 definitions, accessing • 52 in multisystem environment • 51 SNA resource management • 73 SNA resource • 36 Sincoverce • 38 discovery, 920 discovery process • 43 unknown, delete • 36 SOLVE SSI retry interval • 19 start • 19 st	customizing information about SNA resources •	identification • 60
routing codes  SNA resource messages • 303  RTP PUs, discovery • 38  rule sets, EventView • 128  adding • 128  adding • 128  adding rules • 131  copying • 136  deleting • 136  including other EventView rule sets • 136  message suppression • 121  statistics • 130  status • 129  system images, and • 130  testing • 129  Service definitions, transmit • 293  service-driven operations  example • 74  networks • 74  services and SNA groups • 74  all automated resources • 49  all resources • 50  shutdown  slow performed from • 59  SNA group members  status, displaying • 72  weighting and group status • 67  SNA group members  status, displaying • 72  weighting and group status • 67  SNA group members, selection criteria • 61  downstream and upstream • 62  wildcard characters • 62  indicator • 63  preactivation processing • 70  services, and • 74  state thresholds • 66  SNA peroup, and • 66  SNA group, and • 66	40	inactivation • 57
SNA resource messages • 303  RTP PUs, discovery • 38 rule sets, EventView • 128 adding • 128 adding • 128 adding rules • 131 copying • 136 deleting • 136 including other EventView rule sets • 136 message suppression • 121 statistics • 130 status • 129 system images, and • 130 testing • 129  Service definitions, transmit • 293 service definitions, transmit • 293 service definitions, transmit • 293 service and SNA groups • 74 networks • 74 services and SNA groups • 74 services and SNA groups • 74 services and SNA groups • 74 service and SNA groups • 74 services and SNA groups • 74 services and SNA groups • 74 service and SNA groups • 74 services and SNA groups • 74 service definitions, transmit • 293 service definitions, accessing • 52 in multisystem environment • 51 SNA resource filter List panel, actions • 52 SNA resource filter list panel, actions • 52 SNA group to perations definitions, accessing • 52 in multisystem environment • 51 SNA resource soliding • 53 SNA resource filter list panel, actions • 52 SNA resource filter list panel, actions • 52 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62 state, change of  svariant art • 55 startup, wToR confirmation • 20 state thresholds example • 68 no members found by selection criteria, effect of • 66 SNA group, and • 66	restart • 50	member selection, effect of >> downstream
poperation mode • 61 preactivation processing • 70 setule sets, EventView • 128 adding rules • 131 copying • 136 deleting • 136 including other EventView rule sets • 136 message suppression • 121 statistics • 130 status • 129 system images, and • 130 testing • 129  Service definitions, transmit • 293 service-driven operations example • 74 networks • 74 networks • 74 services and SNA groups • 74 state thresholds • 66 SNA operations environment implementation • 77 SNA Resource Filter List panel, actions • 52 SNA resource filters • 51 adding • 53 definitions, accessing • 52 in multisystem environment • 51 SNA resource management • 73 SNA resources customize discovery • 35 discovered • 38 discovery • 38 discovery, PPO message flow • 37 dynamic • 36 messages, MVS routing codes • 303 tune discovery process • 43 unknown, delete • 36 SOLVE SSI retry interval • 19 start • 19 stop • 20 terminate • 20 SPO messages, logging of • 210 staging file • 289, 292 startup, Customize cold start • 35 swarm start • 35 startup, WTOR confirmation • 20 state thresholds of the preactivation processing • 70 services, and • 74 state thresholds • 66 SNA operations environment implementation • 77 SNA Resource Filter List panel, actions • 52 SNA resource Filters • 51 adding • 53 definitions, accessing • 52 in multisystem environment • 51 SNA resource filters • 51 adding • 53 definitions, accessing • 52 in multisystem environment • 51 SNA resource filters • 51 adding • 53 definitions, accessing • 52 in multisystem environment • 51 SNA resource filter List panel, actions • 52 SNA resource filters • 51 adding • 53 definitions, accessing • 52 in multisystem environment • 51 SNA resource filter List panel, actions • 52 SNA resource filter List panel, actions • 52 SNA group in multisystem environment • 51 sold in multisystem environment • 51 SNA group in multisystem environment • 51 SNA group in multisystem environment • 51 sold in mu	routing codes	indicator • 63
rule sets, EventView • 128    adding • 128    adding * 128    adding rules • 131    copying • 136    copying • 136    including other EventView rule sets •	SNA resource messages • 303	members, displaying • 66
adding • 128 adding rules • 131 copying • 136 copying • 136 including other EventView rule sets • 136 message suppression • 121 statistics • 130 status • 129 system images, and • 130 testing • 129  S  Service definitions, transmit • 293 service and SNA groups • 74 networks • 74 set resource to AUTOMATEO • 50 setup definition • 254 SHOW PARMS command • 25 shut down • 49 all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 SNA Group General Description panel • 60 SNA Group List panel, actions that can be performed from • 59 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  services, and • 74 state thresholds • 66 SNA operations environment implementation • 77 sha perations environment • 51 sha perations environment • 51 sha resource filters • 51 adding • 53 SNA resource filters • 51 adding • 53 SNA resource filters • 51 sha perations environment • 51 sha perations environment • 51 sha perations environment • 51 sha resource filters • 51 shading • 53 sha resource filters • 51 shading • 53 sha resource filters • 51 shading • 53 sha resource management • 73 sha resource management • 51 sha resource • 38 discovery • 36 discovery • 36 d	RTP PUs, discovery • 38	operation mode • 61
adding rules • 131 copying • 136 deleting • 136 including other EventView rule sets • 136 message suppression • 121 statistics • 130 status • 129 system images, and • 130 testing • 129  S  S  Service definitions, transmit • 293 service-driven operations example • 74 networks • 74 services and SNA groups • 74 ser resource to AUTOMATED • 50 setup definition • 254 SHOW PARMS command • 25 shut down • 49 all automated resources • 49 all resources • 50 automated resources • 49 SNA Group General Description panel • 60 SNA Group List panel, actions that can be performed from • 59 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  SNA resource filter ist panel, actions • 52 SNA Resource filters • 51 adding • 53 definitions, accessing • 52 in multisystem environment • 51 SNA resource management • 73 SNA resources customize discovery • 35 discovery • 38 discovery • 38 discovery, PPO message flow • 37 dynamic • 36 messages, MVS routing codes • 303 tune discovery process • 43 unknown, delete • 36 SOLVE SSI retry interval • 19 start • 19 stop • 20 terminate • 20 SPO messages, logging of • 210 staging file • 289, 292 startup, WTOR confirmation • 20 state thresholds example • 68 no members found by selection criteria, effect of • 66 SNA group, and • 66 SNA group, and • 66	rule sets, EventView • 128	preactivation processing • 70
adding rules • 131 copying • 136 deleting • 136 including other EventView rule sets • 136 message suppression • 121 statistics • 130 status • 129 system images, and • 130 testing • 129  S  S  Service definitions, transmit • 293 service-driven operations example • 74 networks • 74 services and SNA groups • 74 ser resource to AUTOMATED • 50 setup definition • 254 SHOW PARMS command • 25 shut down • 49 all automated resources • 49 all resources • 50 automated resources • 49 SNA Group General Description panel • 60 SNA Group List panel, actions that can be performed from • 59 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  SNA resource filter ist panel, actions • 52 SNA Resource filters • 51 adding • 53 definitions, accessing • 52 in multisystem environment • 51 SNA resource management • 73 SNA resources customize discovery • 35 discovery • 38 discovery • 38 discovery, PPO message flow • 37 dynamic • 36 messages, MVS routing codes • 303 tune discovery process • 43 unknown, delete • 36 SOLVE SSI retry interval • 19 start • 19 stop • 20 terminate • 20 SPO messages, logging of • 210 staging file • 289, 292 startup, WTOR confirmation • 20 state thresholds example • 68 no members found by selection criteria, effect of • 66 SNA group, and • 66 SNA group, and • 66	adding • 128	services, and • 74
deleting • 136 including other EventView rule sets • 136 message suppression • 121 statistics • 130 status • 129 system images, and • 130 testing • 129  Solvating • 129  Solvationized iscovery • 35  discovery • 35  discovery • 38  discovery • 38  discovery • 38  discovery • 129  In multisystem environment • 51  Solvationized iscovery • 35  discovery • 38  discovery	adding rules • 131	
deleting • 136 including other EventView rule sets • 136 message suppression • 121 statistics • 130 status • 129 system images, and • 130 testing • 129  Solvating • 129  Solvationized iscovery • 35  discovery • 35  discovery • 38  discovery • 38  discovery • 38  discovery • 129  In multisystem environment • 51  Solvationized iscovery • 35  discovery • 38  discovery	copying • 136	SNA operations environment implementation • 77
including other EventView rule sets • 136 message suppression • 121 statistics • 130 status • 129 system images, and • 130 testing • 129  S  Service definitions, transmit • 293 service and SNA groups • 74 networks • 74 services and SNA groups • 74 service wild subject of the state of the st	deleting • 136	SNA Resource Filter List panel, actions • 52
message suppression • 121 statistics • 130 status • 129 system images, and • 130 testing • 129  S  Service definitions, transmit • 293 service-driven operations example • 74 networks • 74 ser tresource to AUTOMATED • 50 setup definition • 254 SHOW PARMS command • 25 shut down • 49 all automated resources • 49 all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 SNA group General Description panel • 60 SNA Group List panel, actions that can be performed from • 59 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  system images, and • 130 definitions, accessing • 52 in multisystem environment • 51 SNA resource management • 73 SNA resources customize discovery • 35 discovery • 38 discovery • 38 discovery, PPO message flow • 37 dynamic • 36 messages, MVS routing codes • 303 tune discovery process • 43 unknown, delete • 36 SOLVE SSI retry interval • 19 start • 19 star		
definitions, accessing • 52 in multisystem environment • 51  SNA resource management • 73 SNA resources customize discovery • 35 discovered • 38 discovery • 38 discovery • 38 discovery, • 90 messages, MVS routing codes • 303 tune discovery process • 43 unknown, delete • 36 SOLVE SSI retry interval • 19 start • 19 star	_	adding • 53
in multisystem environment • 51  system images, and • 130 testing • 129  SNA resource management • 73 SNA resources  customize discovery • 35 discovered • 38 discovery • 38 discovery, PPO message flow • 37 dynamic • 36 messages, MVS routing codes • 303 tune discovery process • 43 services and SNA groups • 74 set resource to AUTOMATED • 50 setup definition • 254 SHOW PARMS command • 25 shut down • 49 all automated resources • 49 all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 automated resources • 49 SNA Group General Description panel • 60 SNA Group List panel, actions that can be performed from • 59 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  in multisystem environment • 51 SNA resource management • 73 SNA resource management • 73 SNA resources and state of sale discovery • 35 discovery • 38 discovery • 36 discovery • 36 discovery • 38 discovery • 36 discovery • 36 discovery • 38 discovery • 38 discovery • 38 discovery • 36 discovery • 38 discovery • 38 discovery • 38 discovery • 38 discovery • 36 discovery • 38 discovery • 38 discovery • 38 discovery • 36 discovery • 38 discovery • 38 discovery • 38 discovery • 36 discovery • 38 discovere • 30 messages, MVS routin		
System images, and • 130 testing • 129  Solve testi	status • 129	
SNA resources  customize discovery • 35 discovered • 38 discovered • 38 discovered • 38 discovery • 38 discovery, PPO message flow • 37 dynamic • 36 messages, MVS routing codes • 303 tune discovery process • 43 unknown, delete • 36 SOLVE SSI SHOW PARMS command • 25 shut down • 49 all automated resources • 49 all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 shut general Description panel • 60 SNA Group List panel, actions that can be performed from • 59 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  SNA group, and • 66 SNA group, and • 66 state, change of		•
customize discovery • 35 discovered • 38 discovered • 38 discovery • 38 discoverd • 38 discovery • 38 discover • 49 solutions • 49 start • 19 start • 19 start • 19 store • 20 terminate • 20 SPO messages, logging of • 210 start • 19 store • 19 sto		_
discovered • 38 discovery • 38 discovery, PPO message flow • 37 dynamic • 36 messages, MVS routing codes • 303 tune discovery process • 43 unknown, delete • 36 SOLVE SSI SHOW PARMS command • 25 shut down • 49 all automated resources • 49 all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 49 SNA Group General Description panel • 60 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  discovery • 38 discovery • 20 messages, MVS routing codes • 303 tune discovery process • 43 unknown, delete • 36 SOLVE SSI retry interval • 19 start • 19 stop • 20 terminate • 20 SPO messages, logging of • 210 staging file • 289, 292 startup, customize cold start • 35 startup, WTOR confirmation • 20 state thresholds example • 68 no members found by selection criteria, effect of • 66 SNA group, and • 66 SNA group, and • 66 SNA group, and • 66 state, change of		customize discovery • 35
discovery, PPO message flow • 37 dynamic • 36 messages, MVS routing codes • 303 tune discovery process • 43 unknown, delete • 36 SOLVE SSI SHOW PARMS command • 25 shut down • 49 all automated resources • 49 all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 automated resources • 49 SNA Group General Description panel • 60 SNA Group List panel, actions that can be performed from • 59 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  discovery, PPO message flow • 37 dynamic • 36 messages, MVS routing codes • 303 tune discovery process • 303 tune discovery process • 43 unknown, delete • 36 SOLVE SSI retry interval • 19 start • 19 stop • 20 terminate • 20 SPO messages, logging of • 210 staging file • 289, 292 startup, customize cold start • 35 warm start • 35 startup, WTOR confirmation • 20 state thresholds example • 68 no members found by selection criteria, effect of • 66 SNA group, and • 66 SNA group, and • 66 state, change of	5	
discovery, PPO message flow • 37 dynamic • 36 messages, MVS routing codes • 303 tune discovery process • 43 unknown, delete • 36 SOLVE SSI SHOW PARMS command • 25 shut down • 49 all automated resources • 49 all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 automated resources • 49 SNA Group General Description panel • 60 SNA Group List panel, actions that can be performed from • 59 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  discovery, PPO message flow • 37 dynamic • 36 messages, MVS routing codes • 303 tune discovery process • 303 tune discovery process • 43 unknown, delete • 36 SOLVE SSI retry interval • 19 start • 19 stop • 20 terminate • 20 SPO messages, logging of • 210 staging file • 289, 292 startup, customize cold start • 35 warm start • 35 startup, WTOR confirmation • 20 state thresholds example • 68 no members found by selection criteria, effect of • 66 SNA group, and • 66 SNA group, and • 66 state, change of	service definitions transmit • 203	discovery • 38
example • 74 networks • 74  services and SNA groups • 74 set resource to AUTOMATED • 50 setup definition • 254 SHOW PARMS command • 25 shut down • 49 all automated resources • 49 all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 sNA group General Description panel • 60 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  dynamic • 36 messages, MVS routing codes • 303 tune discovery process • 43 unknown, delete • 36 SOLVE SSI retry interval • 19 start • 19 stop • 20 terminate • 20 SPO messages, logging of • 210 staging file • 289, 292 startup, wto Rondirmation • 20 state thresholds example • 68 no members found by selection criteria, effect of • 66 SNA group, and • 66 SNA group, and • 66 state, change of		
networks • 74 services and SNA groups • 74 services and SNA groups • 74 set resource to AUTOMATED • 50 setup definition • 254 SHOW PARMS command • 25 shut down • 49 all automated resources • 49 all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 49 SNA Group General Description panel • 60 SNA Group List panel, actions that can be performed from • 59 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  messages, MVS routing codes • 303 tune discovery process • 43 unknown, delete • 36 SOLVE SSI retry interval • 19 start • 19 stop • 20 terminate • 20 SPO messages, logging of • 210 staging file • 289, 292 startup, customize cold start • 35 warm start • 35 startup, WTOR confirmation • 20 state thresholds example • 68 no members found by selection criteria, effect of • 66 SNA group, and • 66 state, change of	·	_
tune discovery process • 43 set resource to AUTOMATED • 50 setup definition • 254 SHOW PARMS command • 25 shut down • 49 all automated resources • 49 all resources • 50 shutdown shut down • 49 all automated resources • 49 construct of the first o	·	•
unknown, delete • 36  SOLVE SSI  retry interval • 19  start • 19  start • 19  stop • 20  terminate • 20  SPO messages, logging of • 210  staging file • 289, 292  startup, customize  cold start • 35  SNA Group General Description panel • 60  SNA group members  status, displaying • 72  weighting and group status • 67  SNA group members, selection criteria • 61  downstream and upstream • 62  wildcard characters • 62  unknown, delete • 36  SOLVE SSI  retry interval • 19  stop • 20  terminate • 20  SPO messages, logging of • 210  staging file • 289, 292  startup, customize  cold start • 35  warm start • 35  startup, WTOR confirmation • 20  state thresholds  example • 68  no members found by selection criteria, effect of  • 66  SNA group, and • 66  state, change of		
Solve SSI SHOW PARMS command • 25 Shut down • 49 all automated resources • 49 all resources • 50 Shutdown all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 49 automated resources • 49 SNA Group General Description panel • 60 SNA Group List panel, actions that can be performed from • 59 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  SOLVE SSI retry interval • 19 start • 19 stop • 20 terminate • 20 SPO messages, logging of • 210 staging file • 289, 292 startup, customize cold start • 35 warm start • 35 startup, WTOR confirmation • 20 state thresholds example • 68 no members found by selection criteria, effect of • 66 SNA group, and • 66 SNA group, and • 66 state, change of	- ·	
shut down • 49 all automated resources • 49 all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 automated resources • 49 SNA Group General Description panel • 60 SNA Group List panel, actions that can be performed from • 59 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  retry interval • 19 stop • 20 terminate • 20 SPO messages, logging of • 210 staging file • 289, 292 startup, customize cold start • 35 warm start • 35 startup, WTOR confirmation • 20 state thresholds example • 68 no members found by selection criteria, effect of • 66 SNA group, and • 66 state, change of		
shut down • 49  all automated resources • 49  all resources • 50  shutdown  all resources • 50  shutdown  all resources • 50  sutomated resources • 49  SNA Group General Description panel • 60  SNA Group List panel, actions that can be performed from • 59  SNA group members  status, displaying • 72  weighting and group status • 67  SNA group members, selection criteria • 61  downstream and upstream • 62  wildcard characters • 62  start • 19  start • 19  stop • 20  terminate • 20  SPO messages, logging of • 210  staging file • 289, 292  startup, customize  cold start • 35  warm start • 35  startup, WTOR confirmation • 20  state thresholds  example • 68  no members found by selection criteria, effect of  • 66  SNA group, and • 66  state, change of	•	retry interval • 19
all automated resources • 49 all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 automated resources • 49 SNA Group General Description panel • 60 SNA Group List panel, actions that can be performed from • 59 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62 stop • 20 terminate • 20 SPO messages, logging of • 210 staging file • 289, 292 startup, customize cold start • 35 warm start • 35 startup, WTOR confirmation • 20 state thresholds example • 68 no members found by selection criteria, effect of • 66 SNA group, and • 66 state, change of		•
all resources • 50 shutdown all resources • 50 automated resources • 49 SNA Group General Description panel • 60 SNA Group List panel, actions that can be performed from • 59 SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67 SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  terminate • 20 SPO messages, logging of • 210 staging file • 289, 292 startup, customize cold start • 35 warm start • 35 startup, WTOR confirmation • 20 state thresholds example • 68 no members found by selection criteria, effect of • 66 SNA group, and • 66 state, change of		stop • 20
SPO messages, logging of • 210  staging file • 289, 292  startup, customize  cold start • 35  warm start • 35  warm start • 35  startup, WTOR confirmation • 20  state thresholds  example • 68  no members found by selection criteria, effect of  downstream and upstream • 62  wildcard characters • 62  SPO messages, logging of • 210  staging file • 289, 292  startup, customize  cold start • 35  warm start • 35  startup, WTOR confirmation • 20  state thresholds  example • 68  no members found by selection criteria, effect of  • 66  SNA group, and • 66  state, change of		·
all resources • 50 automated resources • 49  SNA Group General Description panel • 60  SNA Group List panel, actions that can be performed from • 59  SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67  SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  staging file • 289, 292 startup, customize cold start • 35 warm start • 35 startup, WTOR confirmation • 20 state thresholds example • 68 no members found by selection criteria, effect of • 66 SNA group, and • 66 state, change of		
automated resources • 49  SNA Group General Description panel • 60  SNA Group List panel, actions that can be performed from • 59  SNA group members status, displaying • 72 state thresholds example • 68 no members found by selection criteria, effect of downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  startup, customize cold start • 35  warm start • 35  startup, WTOR confirmation • 20  state thresholds example • 68  no members found by selection criteria, effect of • 66  SNA group members, selection criteria • 61  startup, customize cold start • 35  startup, WTOR confirmation • 20  state thresholds  example • 68  something and group status • 67  SNA group members found by selection criteria, effect of • 66  state, change of		
SNA Group General Description panel • 60  SNA Group List panel, actions that can be performed from • 59  SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67  SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  SNA group General Description panel • 60 cold start • 35 warm start • 35 startup, WTOR confirmation • 20 state thresholds example • 68 no members found by selection criteria, effect of • 66 SNA group, and • 66 state, change of		
SNA Group List panel, actions that can be performed from • 59  SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67  SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  warm start • 35  startup, WTOR confirmation • 20  state thresholds  example • 68  no members found by selection criteria, effect of  • 66  SNA group, and • 66  state, change of		·
from • 59  SNA group members status, displaying • 72 weighting and group status • 67  SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  statet, WTOR confirmation • 20 state thresholds example • 68 no members found by selection criteria, effect of • 66 SNA group, and • 66 state, change of	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
status, displaying • 72  weighting and group status • 67  SNA group members, selection criteria • 61  downstream and upstream • 62  wildcard characters • 62  state thresholds  example • 68  no members found by selection criteria, effect of  • 66  SNA group, and • 66  state, change of		
status, displaying • 72  weighting and group status • 67  SNA group members, selection criteria • 61  downstream and upstream • 62  wildcard characters • 62  example • 68  no members found by selection criteria, effect of  • 66  SNA group, and • 66  state, change of		• •
weighting and group status • 67  SNA group members, selection criteria • 61 downstream and upstream • 62 wildcard characters • 62  no members found by selection criteria, effect of • 66 SNA group, and • 66 state, change of		
SNA group members, selection criteria • 61  downstream and upstream • 62  wildcard characters • 62  SNA group, and • 66  state, change of	· · · · ·	•
downstream and upstream • 62 SNA group, and • 66 wildcard characters • 62 state, change of		•
wildcard characters • 62 state, change of		
Wildedia Characters 02		
alerts + 250	whice did diters • 02	alerts • 230

```
STATECHANGE parameter group • 230
                                                            user profiles
subordinates
                                                               icon panel, adding • 116
   knowledge base synchronization • 287
support, contacting • 4
suppressing messages
                                                            variables • 301
   message rules • 158
                                                               processes, use in • 269
synchronize databases
                                                               SNA resource data • 301
   link regions • 287
                                                            variables, EventView • 137
   maintain synchronization • 292
                                                               message rule trigger, as • 156
SYSLOG operand • 211
                                                               retrieving the value of • 137
SYSOUT • 209
                                                            verbs
SYSPARMS, general information
                                                               &INTCMD • 208
   command format • 27
                                                            VTAM events, response and processing time limits •
   specify in INIT member • 28
system commands, log • 34
                                                            W
system identifier • 26
system images
                                                            warm start • 35
   transmit • 293
                                                            wildcard characters
system images, controlling
                                                               % • 62
   checkpoint restart • 47
                                                               • 62
   loading • 46
                                                               message text, for • 147
system log • 211
                                                            wrap log data sets • 209
   PPO messages • 211
system messages, log • 33
SYSTEMID parameter • 26
technical support, contacting • 4
timer commands • 207
timers, EventView • 134, 139
transient logs
   size • 32
transmit
   components • 293
   EventView rule sets • 293
   knowledge base records • 294
   service definitions • 293
trouble ticket interface
   define CA Service Desk • 218
   define custom • 217
   define email • 215
   defined • 214
   multiple email addressees, for • 222
   set up data definition • 220
U
unlink a region • 293
upstream indicators • 62
```